

**LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z**



**The Ultimate
Driving Machine**



OWNER'S HANDBOOK. THE BMW 3 SERIES PLUG-IN-HYBRID.



WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Handbook.

BMW 3 Series Plug-In-Hybrid.

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW.

Also use the Integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains information which will help you to maintain both the operating and road safety of your BMW as well as its full resale value.

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook is the most up-to-date medium. After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

! NOTES

Notes	8
Safety of the hybrid system	19
Owner's Handbook media	20

⚡ QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in	24
Adjustment and operation	28
On the move	32

↓ CONTROLS

Driving area	44
Vehicle operating state	49
iDrive	53
BMW Remote Software Upgrade	69
General settings	72
Personal settings	77
Connections	82
Opening and closing	90
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel	116
Carrying children safely	130
Driving	144
Displays	164
Lights	185
Safety	194
Driving Stability Control Systems	237
Driver Assistance Systems	241
Driving comfort	286
Air conditioning	287

Interior equipment	301
Storage compartments	305
Boot	309

DRIVING HINTS

Driving precautions	318
Saving fuel	323

MOBILITY

Charging vehicle	332
Refuelling	341
Wheels and tyres	344
Engine compartment	370
Operating fluids	373
Maintenance	380
Replacing parts	383
Help in case of a breakdown	388
General care	397

REFERENCE

Technical data	404
Appendix	406
Everything from A to Z	408

© 2019 Bayerische Motoren Werke

Aktiengesellschaft

Munich, Germany

Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written permission from BMW AG, Munich.

English ID7 VI/19, 07 19 490

Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.



! NOTES

Notes	8
Safety of the hybrid system	19
Owner's Handbook media	20

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

We recommend that you read through the first chapter to obtain an initial overview of the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

These topics are also covered in the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service Partner

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW – on technology, for example – are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes the equipment and functions included in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide web version

The Driver's Guide web version shows the most appropriate information for the selected vehicle. Where possible, only the equipment and functions actually installed in the vehicle will be described. The Driver's Guide web version can be displayed in any up-to-date browser.

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.
>...<	Commands for the voice control system.
>>...<<	Replies by the voice control system.

Actions

The actions to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The sequence of steps must be followed.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

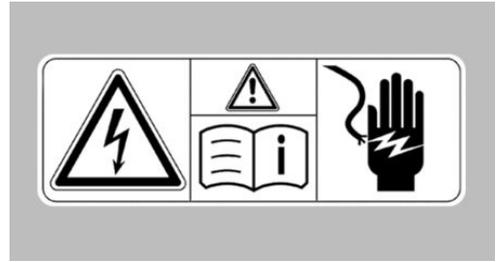
Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists:

- > First option.
- > Second option.

Symbol on components and assemblies

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Handbook.



The symbols on parts of the vehicle indicate that life-threatening injury could occur as a result of electric shock if the high-voltage technology or the orange-coloured high-voltage components are used inappropriately.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all the standard, national and special equipment available for the model series. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment and functions not featured in a vehicle, for example due to selected special equipment or the country variant.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the door pillar on the driver's door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the powertrain assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high level of safety and quality of the vehicles is ensured by continuous development. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases that the features described in this handbook may differ from those in your vehicle.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this manual is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service centre, who will be pleased to advise you.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Your own safety

Intended use

Please comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical data of the vehicle.
- ▷ The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- ▷ Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval (homologation) requirements of the country to which it was first delivered. If the vehicle is to be driven in another country, it may have to be adapted beforehand to any prevailing different operating conditions and approval requirements. If the vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a

certain country, warranty claims cannot be lodged for the vehicle there. Warranty claims can also be invalidated if the on-board network has been modified, e.g. through the use of control units, hardware or software that have been classified as unsuitable by the vehicle manufacturer. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and high-performance electronics, requires appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

Consequently, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If another BMW authorised workshop is chosen, BMW recommends choosing one that performs work, for example maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If such work, for example maintenance and repair, is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk.

Work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork can cause components, for example the radar sensors, to fail or malfunction, resulting in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories that are approved by BMW and are therefore suitable for this purpose.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. On the other hand, BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Likewise no guarantee can be assumed even if the product has been granted official approval in a specific country. Tests performed for such approvals cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Data memory

General

A number of electronic control devices are installed in your vehicle. Electronic control devices process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves or exchange with one another, for example. Some control devices are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for example Driver Assistance Systems. There are also control devices which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Information on the data saved or exchanged can be obtained from the vehicle manufacturer, for example in a separate brochure.

Personal identification

Every vehicle has a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, a vehicle owner can be identified by the vehicle identification number, the number plate and the relevant authorities. There are also other ways of tracing data collected in the vehicle back to the driver or vehicle owner, for example via the Connected-Drive account used.

Data protection laws

As per prevailing data protection law, vehicle users have certain rights they may assert against the vehicle manufacturer or companies that collect or process their personal data.

Vehicle users have an unrestricted right to obtain information free of charge from bodies that save their personal data.

Such bodies could be:

- ▷ Vehicle manufacturer.
- ▷ Qualified Service Partners.
- ▷ Specialist workshops.
- ▷ Service providers.

Vehicle users may request information about what personal data has been saved, what it is used for and where it has come from. Proof of ownership or use is required in order to obtain this information.

The right to information also extends to information about data that has been transferred to other companies or bodies.

Please refer to the vehicle manufacturer's website for the applicable data privacy policy. This data privacy policy contains information about the right to have data deleted or corrected. The vehicle manufacturer's website also provides its contact details and those of its data protection officer.

The vehicle owner can have the data saved in the vehicle read out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, on payment of a fee where applicable.

The legally required on-board diagnosis OBD socket in the vehicle is used to read out the vehicle data.

Legal requirements regarding data disclosure

According to current law, the vehicle manufacturer is obliged to provide the authorities with any data it has stored. Data is provided to the extent

required and on a case-by-case basis, for example to investigate a criminal offence.

The current law also gives state bodies authorisation to read out data from the vehicle themselves for individual cases. This could include reading out data from the airbag control device to shed light on the circumstances of an accident, for example.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control devices process data to operate the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- ▷ Status messages relating to the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel rotation speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belt indicator.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is only processed within the vehicle itself and is usually transient. The data is not saved after the vehicle is switched off.

Electronic parts, for example control devices and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle's condition, component use and wear, maintenance requirements, events or errors can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or its environment, for example:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, for example fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example triggering of an airbag, activation of the drive stability control systems.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required so that the control units can perform their functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise vehicle functions.

Most of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or error memories in response to specific circumstances.

When service work is being carried out, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. The data is read out via the on-board diagnostics (OBD) socket, which the vehicle is required to have by law.

The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant organisations in the service network.

The data logs the technical conditions of the vehicle and helps in locating errors, complying with warranty obligations and improving quality.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle. Data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer warranty claims.

Error and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be saved in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

These include, for example:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Suspension and climate control settings.

Data can be imported into the vehicle entertainment and communication system if required, for example via a smartphone.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, this data includes:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on usage of Internet services.

This data may be saved locally in the vehicle or stored on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, for example a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is saved in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly requested in the course of using online services. The transfer depends on the settings selected for using the services.

Integration of mobile devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for example smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle controls.

Sound and images from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of integration, this includes position data and other general vehicle information, for example. This optimises the way in which selected apps, for example navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for example active access to vehicle data.

How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The range of possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the relevant functions are described in the appropriate place, for example the Owner's Handbook or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also provided. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on legal permission, a contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. Excluded from this are functions and services which are required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy

conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no control over the content exchanged when using these services. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Statutory emergency call system

Principle

The eCall emergency call system required by law enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be issued in the event of accidents, for example.

The emergency calls are answered by the public rescue coordination centre.

General

For information on the statutory on-board emergency call system based on the 112 emergency call, as well as its operation and its functions, see page 390,

The eCall service based on the 112 emergency call is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

If a serious accident occurs, the eCall statutory emergency call system is activated automatically by on-board sensors as a standard feature. It is also triggered automatically if the vehicle is equipped with an intelligent emergency call system that fails to work in the event of a serious accident.

The eCall statutory emergency call system can also be triggered manually if required.

If a critical system failure occurs that would put the eCall statutory emergency call system out of operation, the vehicle occupants receive a warning, see page 391.

Information on data processing

The eCall statutory emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▶ Protection of personal data: regulation 2016/679/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- ▶ Protection of personal data: directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

Personal data is only processed for the purpose of transmitting eCall emergency calls to the standardised European emergency call number 112.

SIM card

The eCall statutory emergency call system operates via mobile communications through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is not permanently connected to the mobile telephone network; rather, it remains connected only as long as the emergency call is active.

Data types and their recipients

The eCall statutory emergency call system may only collect and process the following data:

- ▶ The vehicle identification number for rapidly identifying the vehicle, for example the model.
- ▶ Vehicle type, for example passenger car.
- ▶ Type of vehicle drive, for example petrol or diesel, for assessing the risks involved in a rescue, for example the risk of fire caused by fuel.
- ▶ The vehicle's position at the time of the accident, its last three locations and the driving direction in order to locate the vehicle more quickly on very complex route sections, for example.
- ▶ A log of the automatic system activation, along with the time stamp.
- ▶ Control information, which tells rescue services whether the emergency call was triggered automatically or manually, for example.
- ▶ A time stamp for determining the time of the accident in order to optimise the deployment plans of the rescue services.

- ▶ The driving direction for establishing which side of a motorway carriageway is affected, for example.

The authorities of the state in whose territory the eCall system emergency call is made determine which emergency call centres receive and process the statutory emergency call.

Data processing configuration

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that the data contained in the system memory cannot be accessed outside the system before an emergency call is triggered.

The data collected for the eCall statutory emergency call system is only saved in the vehicle and sent to the rescue coordination centre when an emergency call is triggered.

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that it cannot be traced and there is no permanent tracking during normal operation.

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that the data in the internal system memory is deleted automatically and continuously.

The vehicle's location data is continuously overwritten in the system's internal memory so that only the vehicle's last three locations - which the system needs for normal operation - are ever stored.

The activity data log of the eCall statutory emergency call system is retained only for as long as is necessary to handle the eCall emergency call and under no circumstances for any longer than 13 hours after the eCall emergency call was triggered.

Rights of individuals affected by data processing

The individual affected by data processing, for example the vehicle owner, has the right to access the data and can request that data concerning him or her that is not processed in accordance with the statutory regulations be corrected, deleted or blocked as applicable. Each time that data is corrected, deleted or blocked in

line with these regulations, the third parties to whom the data was transmitted must be notified, insofar as this is reasonably practical.

The individual affected by data processing has the right to complain to the relevant data protection body if he or she believes that his or her rights have been violated by having their that personal data processed.

For matters relating to access rights, please contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call system

Principle

The intelligent emergency call system enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be placed, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer.

In addition to the intelligent emergency call system, the eCall statutory emergency call system is present in the vehicle and is active depending on the situation.

The vehicle owner has the right to use either the intelligent emergency call system or the eCall statutory emergency call system.

For information on operating the intelligent emergency call system and its functions, see page 390.

Legal basis

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▶ Protection of personal data: directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

- ▶ Protection of personal data: directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

The ConnectedDrive contract concluded for this function, as well as the relevant laws, ordinances and directives of the European Parliament and the European Council provide the legal basis for the activation and function of the intelligent emergency call system.

The relevant ordinances and directives govern the protection of individuals in terms of processing personal data.

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with European directives on the protection of personal data.

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data only with the vehicle owner's consent.

The intelligent emergency call system and other added-value services may only process personal data with the express consent of the individual affected by data processing, for example the vehicle owner.

SIM card

The intelligent emergency call system operates via mobile communications through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is permanently logged into the mobile telephone network so a connection can be established quickly. The data is sent to the vehicle manufacturer in the event of an emergency.

Improving quality

The vehicle manufacturer also uses the data sent as part of an emergency call to improve product and service quality.

Position determination

Only the provider of the mobile telephone network is able to determine the position of the vehicle based on mobile telephone mast locations. The network operator is not able to link the vehicle identification number to the telephone num-

ber of the installed SIM card. Only the vehicle manufacturer is able to link the vehicle identification number to the telephone number of the installed SIM card.

Log data for emergency calls

The log data for emergency calls is saved in a vehicle memory. The oldest log data is regularly deleted. The log data includes information on when and where an emergency call was placed, for example in the event of an accident.

In exceptional cases, the log data can be read out from the vehicle memory. It is usually only possible for log data to be read out with a court order and if the corresponding devices are directly connected to the vehicle.

Automatic emergency call

The system has been designed so that an emergency call is triggered automatically following an accident of a certain severity, which is detected by the sensors in the vehicle.

Sent information

If an emergency call is made by the intelligent emergency call system, the same information is conveyed to the appointed emergency call centre as is normally conveyed to the public rescue coordination centre by the eCall statutory emergency call system.

Furthermore, the intelligent emergency call system also conveys the following additional information to an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer and, where applicable, to the public rescue coordination centre:

- Accident data, for example the direction of the collision as detected by the vehicle sensors in order to facilitate the deployment plans of the rescue services.
- Contact data, for example the telephone number of the installed SIM card and the driver's telephone number, if available, so that those involved in the accident can be contacted quickly if necessary.

Data storage

The data relating to an emergency call that has been triggered is saved in the vehicle. The data contains information about the emergency call, for example the place and time it was issued.

The emergency call centre saves audio recordings of the emergency call.

Audio recordings of the customer are saved for 24 hours, in case details of the emergency call need to be analysed. After that, the audio recordings are deleted. Audio recordings of the emergency call centre employee are saved for 24 hours for quality assurance purposes.

Disclosure of personal data

The data obtained in the context of an intelligent emergency call is only used to process the emergency call. If legally obliged to do so, the vehicle manufacturer will disclose the data it has processed and, where applicable, still has saved.

Statutory emergency call system

The owner of a vehicle equipped with an intelligent emergency call system and the eCall statutory emergency call system has the right to use the on-board eCall system instead of the intelligent emergency call function.

To request deactivation, please contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The eCall statutory emergency call system is always on standby in addition to the intelligent emergency call system. The eCall statutory emergency call system takes over the emergency call function if the intelligent emergency call system is not functional for technical reasons, for example if the emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer cannot be reached.

The eCall statutory emergency call system uses the infrastructure of the 112 public emergency call number.

The system can be configured so that emergency calls are always made via the eCall statu-

tory emergency call system and not via the intelligent emergency call system. Have the setting configured by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Vehicle identification number

Engine compartment



The vehicle identification number is in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive, see page [83](#).

Safety of the hybrid system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Working on the hybrid system

General

Therefore, changes and work on the vehicle, for example, even retrofitting of accessories must only be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop that operates to BMW specifications with suitably trained personnel.

Safety note

DANGER

An electric shock can occur if the work is not carried out correctly, in particular maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system. There is a danger of injury, fire or life. Work on the vehicle, especially maintenance, repair or modifications, is only allowed to be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Contact with water

The hybrid system is generally safe also in the following example situations:

- ▶ Water in the footwell, for example, after a rain shower with the Glass Roof open.
- ▶ Vehicle is in water, according to the specified fording depth.
- ▶ Liquid spills in the boot.

Automatic deactivation

In the event of an accident the hybrid system is shut down automatically, so as not to endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.

Follow notes on conduct after an incident, see page 393.

Owner's Handbook media

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Media overview

Various media can be used to call up content from the Owner's Handbook. The following Owner's Handbook media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated

Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Printed Owner's Handbook

Principle

The printed Owner's Handbook describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series.

General

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

Supplementary Owner's Handbooks

Please also follow the supplementary Owner's Handbooks which are attached in addition to the on-board literature as necessary.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook

1.  Press the button.
2. "CAR"

- "Owner's Handbook"
- Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Turn the Controller until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help

General

The section of the Owner's Handbook relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Calling up when using iDrive

Switch to the Options menu directly from the function on the Control Display:

-  Press the button.
- "Owner's Handbook"

Calling up when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

-  "Owner's Handbook"

Switching between a function and the Owner's Handbook

You can use the Control Display to switch from a function, for example the radio, to the Owner's Handbook, and then back and forth between the two displays:

-  Press the button.
- "Owner's Handbook"
- Select the desired page in the Owner's Handbook.

-  Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed function.
-  Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook.

To switch continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook, repeat steps 4 and 5. New screens are opened each time you do so.

Favourites buttons

General

The links/entry points/short cuts to the Owner's Handbook can be saved to Favourites buttons and called up directly.

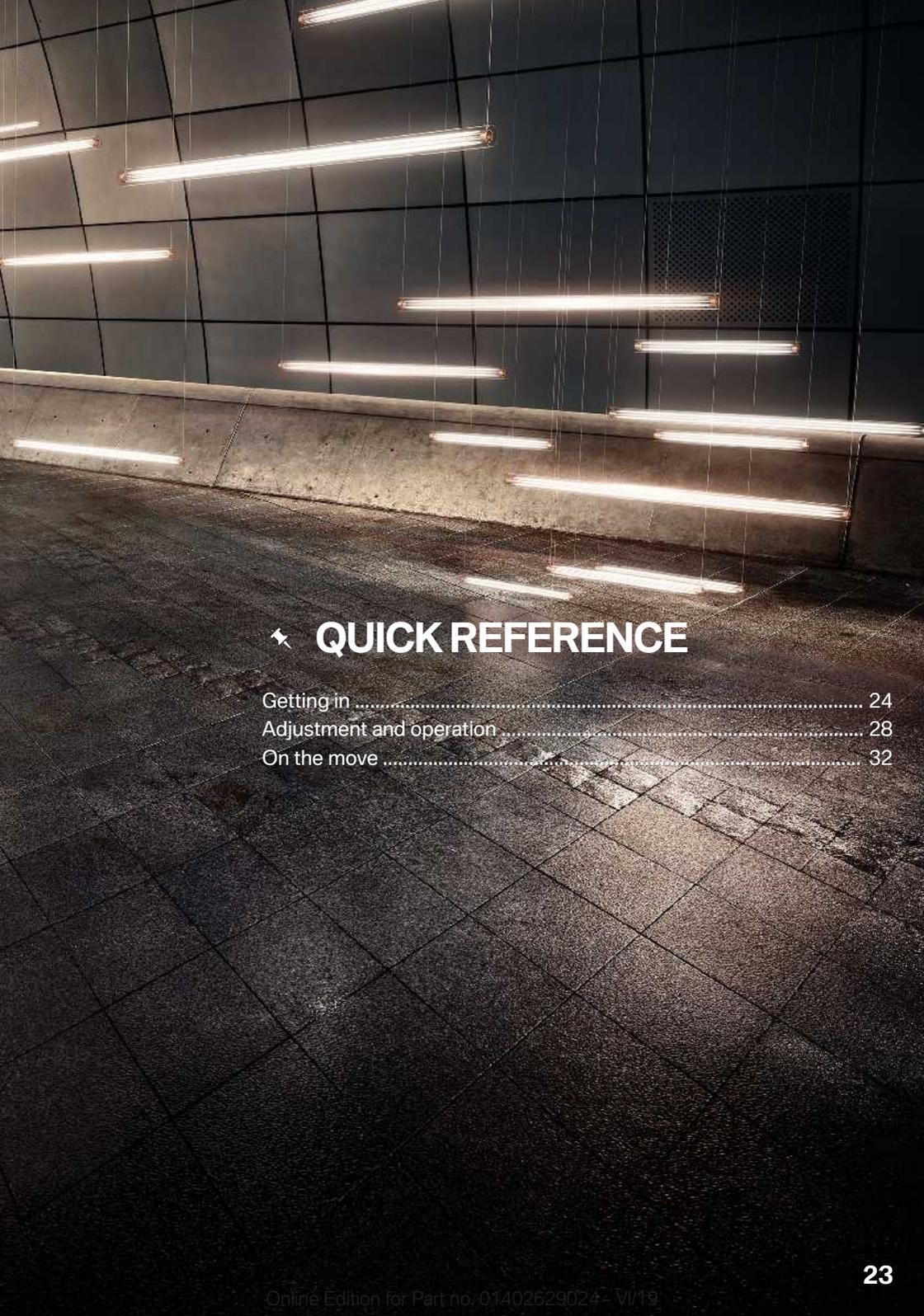
Saving

- Select the required jump using iDrive:
 - ▷ "Keyword search"
 - ▷ "Picture search"
 - ▷ "Quick reference"
 - ▷ "User help"
 - ▷ "Chapters"
 - ▷ "Quicklist"
-  Press and hold the required Favourites button for more than 2 seconds.

Calling up

-  Press the appropriate button. Owner's Handbook is displayed directly with the selected shortcut.





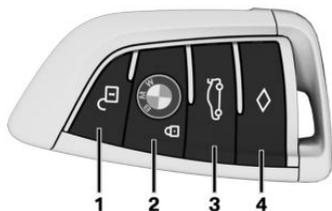
⚡ QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in	24
Adjustment and operation	28
On the move	32

Getting in

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 To lock
- 3 Without automatic operation of the tailgate: opening the boot lid
With automatic tailgate operation: to open/close boot lid
- 4 Function adjustable:
Headlight courtesy delay feature, standing air conditioning

Unlocking the vehicle

 Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

 Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the  button on the vehicle key. All vehicle entrances are locked.

 Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Central locking buttons

Overview



Central locking buttons.

To lock

 Pressing the button locks the vehicle when the front doors are closed.

Unlocking

 Pressing button unlocks vehicle.

Comfort Access

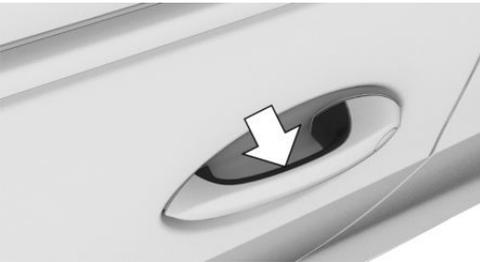
Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

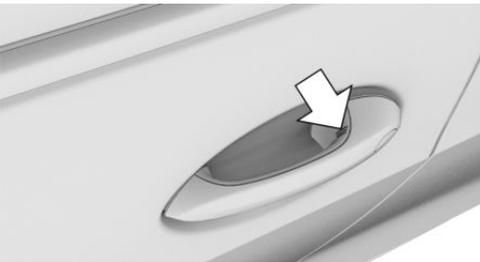
The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

Locking the vehicle



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid

Principle

The boot lid can be opened and closed contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you.

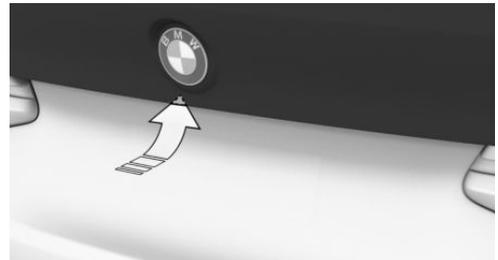
Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move through the ranges of both sensors.



Boot lid

Opening



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- ▷  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.
If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.

Without automatic operation of the tailgate: closing

Close the boot lid manually.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing

- ▷  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid has closed.
- ▷  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

Displays and controls

Around the steering wheel



- 1 Light switch element
- 2 Turn indicator, high-beam headlights
- 3 Instrument cluster
- 4 Wipers

Indicator and warning lamps

Instrument cluster

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

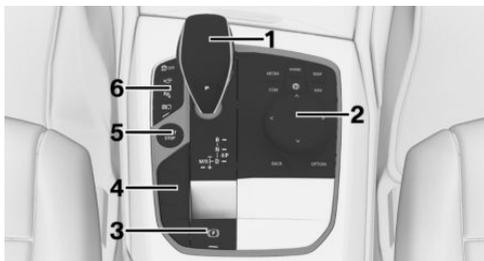
When the engine starts or the standby state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is briefly checked.

Driver's door



- 1 Power window switches
- 2 Central locking system
- 3 Seats, comfort functions
- 4 Exterior mirror
- 5 To open/close boot lid
- 6 Tank aeration

Switch cluster



- 1 Selector lever
- 2 Controller
- 3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
- 4 Driving Experience Control
- 5 Start/stop button
- 6 Assistance systems

iDrive

Principle

iDrive comprises a wide range of functions. These functions can be operated using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version,

the touchscreen, voice control system or Gesture Control.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	To call up the main menu.
	To call up the Apps menu.
	To call up the Communication menu.
	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
	To call up the navigation map.
	To call up the previous screen.
	To call up the Options menu.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Wait for the acoustic signal.
- Say the command.

 This symbol on the Control Display shows that the voice control system is active.

If no further spoken commands are possible, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

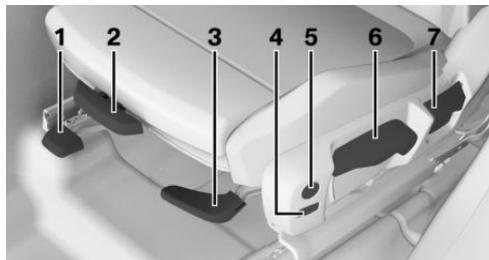
Switching off the voice control system

 Press the button on the steering wheel or say ›Cancel‹.

Adjustment and operation

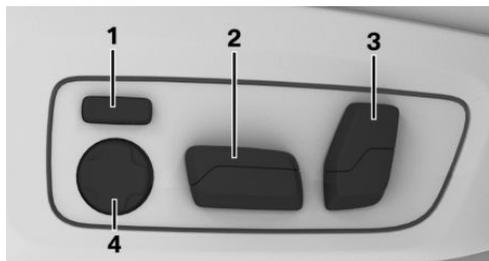
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats



- 1 Forward/back
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Seat angle
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Height
- 7 Backrest angle

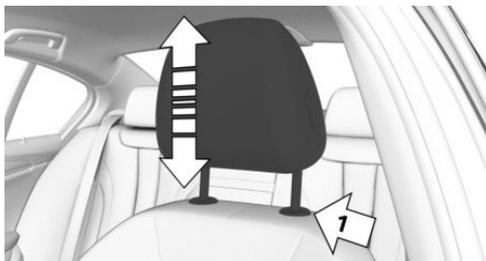
Electrically adjustable seats



- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
- 3 Backrest angle
- 4 Lumbar support

To adjust the head restraint

Height



- ▷ Downwards: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push head restraint upwards.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

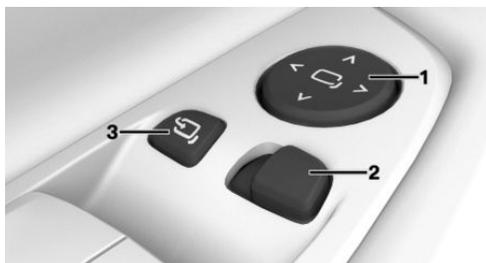
If the vehicle is equipped with M sport seats:
The head restraints can be adjusted in height.

Distance from back of head



- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

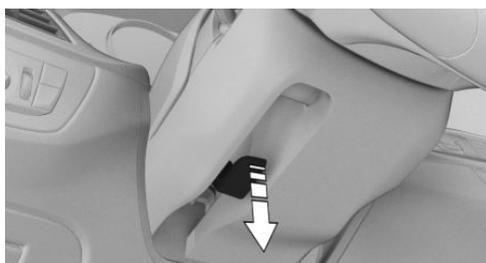
To adjust the exterior mirrors



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function
- 3 Folding in and out

To adjust the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever downwards.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▶ Seat position.
- ▶ Exterior mirror position.
- ▶ Height of the Head-Up Display.

Saving

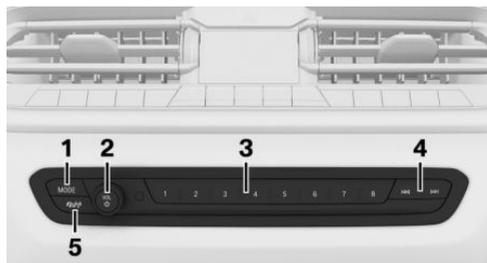
1. Set the desired position.
2.  Press the button on the door. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

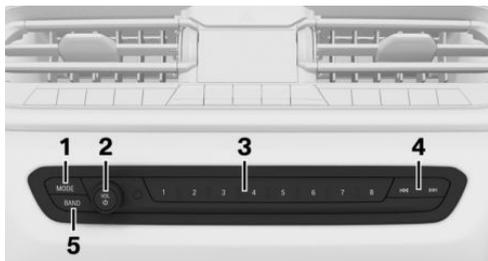
Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Depending on the national-market version: radio



- 1 Changing the entertainment source
- 2 Sound output on/off, volume
- 3 Favourites buttons
- 4 Changing station/track
- 5 Traffic information



- 1 Changing the entertainment source
- 2 Sound output on/off, volume
- 3 Favourites buttons
- 4 Changing station/track
- 5 Change waveband

Navigation destination entry

Entering the destination using the quick-search function

1.  Press the button on the Controller.
2.  "Quick search"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.
If applicable, the search term will be automatically completed in grey text.
Press the Controller or tilt it upwards to accept the suggested search term.
4. **OK** Select symbol as appropriate.
The results are shown as a list.
5. "Search location": select search location if applicable.
6. Tilt the Controller to the right.
7. Select the desired destination.

Connecting mobile telephone

General

Once the mobile telephone has been connected in the vehicle, it can be operated using iDrive and the buttons on the steering wheel.

Connecting the mobile telephone via Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If applicable, set the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new telephone"
4. To perform other operations on the mobile telephone; see the user manual of the mobile telephone: for example finding/connecting Bluetooth device or new device.
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile telephone. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, either a control number is displayed, or you will have to enter the control number yourself.

- ▶ Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number in the device display.

Confirm the control number in the device and on the Control Display.

- ▶ Enter the same control number on the device and via iDrive then confirm.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Telephony

Accepting a call

Depending on the vehicle equipment, incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

- ▶ Via iDrive:
 -  "Accept"
- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▶ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster: Select using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel: "Accept"



- ▶ Via the touchscreen: tap the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▶ By gestures: point towards the Control Display using your index finger.

Dialling a number

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If applicable, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5.  Select the symbol. The call is made using the mobile telephone assigned to the telephone function.

If the connection is to be made through the additional telephone:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Compatible iPhone.
iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▶ Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- ▶ Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"

5. Set the following setting:
"Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Registering iPhone with CarPlay

Register iPhone via Bluetooth on the vehicle.

Select CarPlay as the function:

-  "Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

On the move

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state



- ▷ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▷ Press the start/stop button.

Drive-ready state is active:

- ▷ Starting the internal combustion engine.
- ▷ Drive-ready state for electric driving without starting the internal combustion engine.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
The engine is switched off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Hybrid system driving modes

Overview



Buttons in the vehicle

Button	Drive mode
	In HYBRID STANDARD and HYBRID ECO PRO, the vehicle is propelled in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor.
	In ELECTRIC STANDARD and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, the vehicle is driven exclusively electrically. ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL can be specified as the default mode.
	With BATTERY CONTROL, the electric range can be retained and conserved for a later point in the journey or increased if necessary.

Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system therefore shuts down the internal combustion engine, if the preconditions for electric driving are met. The standby state remains switched on. READY is shown in the instrument cluster. If needed, the internal combustion engine starts automatically.

Parking brake

Engaging

- Pull the switch.
LED and indicator lamp are illuminated.

Releasing

- With drive-ready state switched on:



Steptronic transmission: press the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

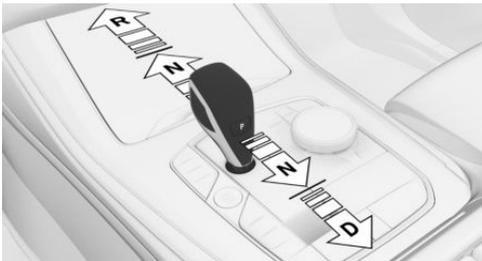
The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R



- ▷ D drive position.
- ▷ N neutral.
- ▷ R reverse.

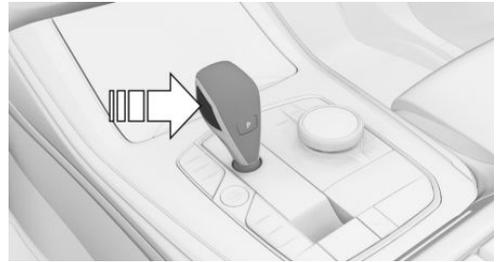
With the driver's seat belt fastened, briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point. Selector lever returns to centre position in each case.

Apply the brakes until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position or reverse gear is selected.

A selector lever lock prevents inadvertently shifting to selector lever position R or inadvertently shifting from selector lever position P.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

labelling="Section-Header">Cancelling the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, sport programme and manual operation



Activate sport programme/manual operation: Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

Manual operation:

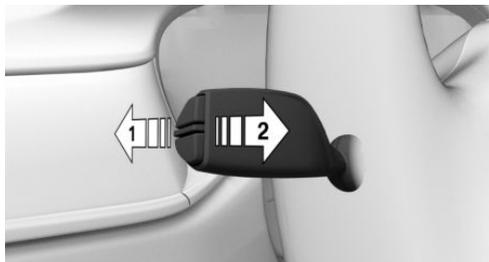
- ▶ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- ▶ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

Deactivate sport programme/manual operation:

Press the selector lever to the right.

High-beam headlights, flasher, indicator

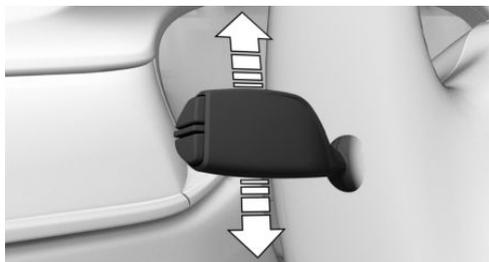
High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



Push the lever forwards or pull it back.

- ▶ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▶ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Turn indicator



- ▶ On: press the lever beyond the resistance point.

- ▶ Off: press the lever in the opposite direction beyond the resistance point.
- ▶ Triple turn signal: lightly tip the lever up or down.
- ▶ Indicating a turn briefly: press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Light and lighting

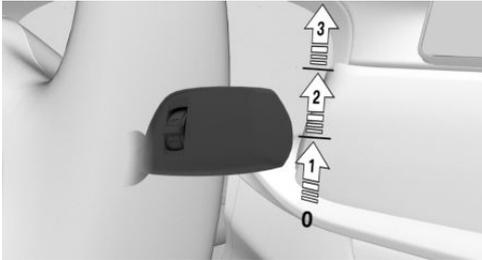
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
OFF	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Side lights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and flick-wiping

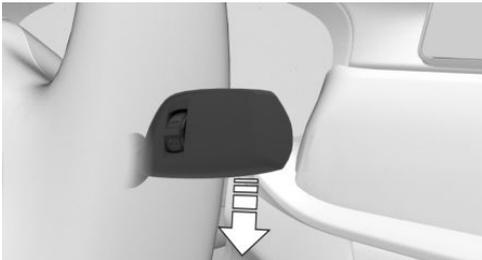
Switching on



Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▶ Rest position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and flick-wiping

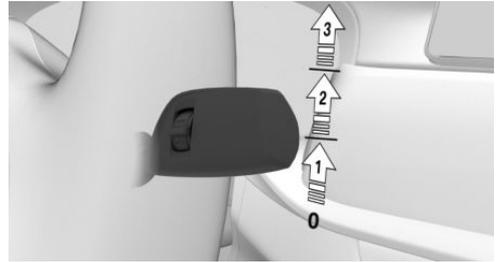


Press the lever down.

- ▶ To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- ▶ To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

Rain sensor

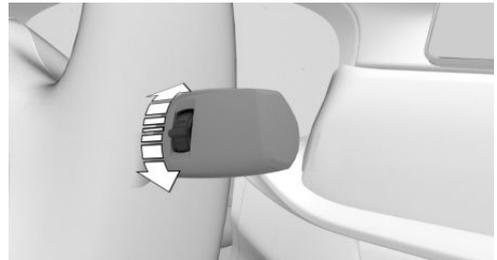
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its home position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back to the home position.

To adjust the sensitivity



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

To clean the windscreen



Pull the wiper lever.

Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO programme.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Switch off.
	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
	Rear window heating.
	Seat heating.
	Air-conditioning mode.
	Air flow, manual.

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Maximum cooling.

Button	Function
	AUTO programme.
	Air flow, manual. Switch off.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
	Rear window heating.
	Seat heating.
	Air-conditioning mode. To call up the air conditioning menu. For the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation.



Refuelling stop

Charging vehicle

Connecting

To connect, engage selector lever position P and unlock the vehicle. Apply parking brake if necessary.

1. To open the charge point flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The charge point flap opens.



2. Remove cover from charging cable connector if necessary.
3. If necessary, connect the Mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the AC rapid charging cable to the port on the AC charging station.
4. Place the charging cable plug into the charge point and push in as far as the stop.

Removing

During the charging process, the charging cable is automatically locked. Unlock the charging cable before removing.

Before pulling off, clean the area between the charge point flap and charging connection, for example to remove snow.

1. Operate the release button on the vehicle key or the door handle.
Charging cable is unlocked for a short time.
2. Hold the charging cable by the gripping areas.

3. Remove charging cable from the charge point, arrow.



4. Put any charge port lid in place.
5. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
6. Fit cover on charging cable connector if necessary.
7. If necessary, disconnect the Mode 2 charging cable from the domestic socket outlet or the AC rapid charging cable from the port on the AC charging station.
8. Store charging cable.
Plug in a fixed charging cable at a charging station in the place provided for it.

Refuelling

Aerating tank

An overpressure may form in the fuel tank as a result of petrol vapours which is dissipated before fuel tank cap is opened.

Button is in driver's footwell.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press  button to start aerating.

The tank aeration status is shown in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, the tank aeration may take several minutes.

When the tank aeration has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel tank cap is released for opening.

3. Open fuel filler flap.

If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank aeration, press the button again.

If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after the button has been pressed again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

Fuel tank cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.
3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.

Petrol

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphurfree or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre inflation pressure information



The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions can be found on the tyre pressure plate on the door pillar.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

For Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM:

The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been performed.

For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the Control Display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Check regularly and adjust as necessary:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before a long journey.

Electronic oil measurement

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

Different messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level. Follow these messages.

Adding engine oil

General

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Topping up



Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Note the top-up quantity in the message.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Note recommended engine oil types.

Breakdown Assist

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Help in case of a breakdown

BMW Emergency Service

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If applicable, "BMW Roadside Assist."

A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge Service

The Concierge Service provides information about hotels, restaurants etc. and can send an SMS with the required information to the vehicle. Addresses can also be sent directly to the navigation system.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. If applicable, "Concierge Services"

A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established.

Teleservice

Teleservices are services that help to keep the vehicle mobile.

Teleservices may include the following services:

- ▷ BMW breakdown assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Teleservice Report.
- ▷ Teleservice Battery Guard.
- ▷ Your Service Partner.
- ▷ Online logbook.





A high-angle photograph of a winding asphalt road that curves through a lush, mountainous landscape. The road is flanked by dense green vegetation and rocky terrain. The scene is brightly lit, suggesting a sunny day. The road surface shows some shadows and texture. In the distance, more of the winding road and the surrounding hills are visible.

↓ CONTROLS

Driving area	44
Vehicle operating state	49
iDrive	53
BMW Remote Software Upgrade	69
General settings	72
Personal settings	77
Connections	82
Opening and closing	90
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel	116
Carrying children safely	130
Driving	144
Displays	164
Lights	185
Safety	194
Driving Stability Control Systems	237
Driver Assistance Systems	241
Driving comfort	286
Air conditioning	287
Interior equipment	301
Storage compartments	305
Boot	309

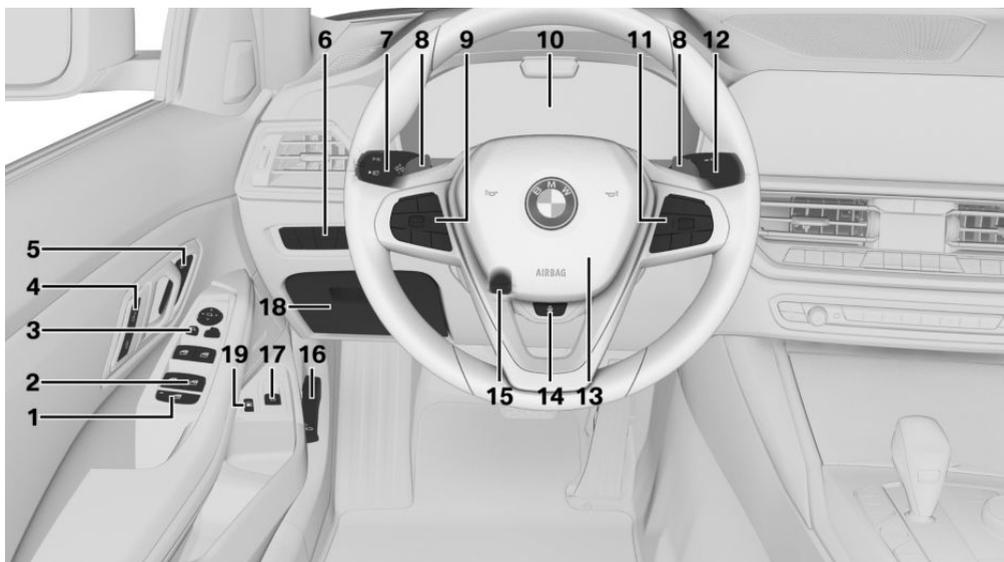
Driving area

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel



- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1  Safety switch 112</p> <p>2  Power window switches 110</p> <p>3 Exterior mirror operation 125</p> <p>4 Central locking system</p> | <p> To unlock 96</p> <p> Locking 96</p> <p>5 Seat comfort functions</p> <p> Memory function 128</p> <p>6 Lights</p> |
|--|--|

-  Front fog lights [191](#)
-  Rear fog light [191](#)
-  Light switch [185](#)
-  Lights off
-  Daytime driving lights [187](#)
-  Side lights [186](#)
-  Automatic driving lights control [185](#)
-  Adaptive light functions [188](#)
-  High-beam assistance [189](#)
-  Low-beam headlights [186](#)
-  Instrument lighting [192](#)
-  Right parking light [186](#)
-  Left parking light [186](#)
- 7** Steering-column lever, left
-  Turn indicator [154](#)
-  High-beam headlights, headlight flasher [155](#)
-  High-beam assistance [189](#)
-  Widgets in the instrument cluster [165](#)
- Journey data [180](#)
- 8** Shift paddles [158](#)
- 9** Buttons on steering wheel, left
-  Manual Speed Limiter [241](#)
-  Depending on the equipment version:
Cruise Control on/off [243](#)
-  Depending on the equipment version:
Active Cruise Control on/off [245](#)
-  With steering and lane control assistant [257](#):
Cruise Control, distance control and lane tracking on/off
-  Cruise Control: to store a speed
-  Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed
-  Interrupting Cruise Control
-  Resuming Cruise Control
-  Active Cruise Control: to increase the distance
-  Active Cruise Control: to reduce the distance
-  Rocker switch for Cruise Control
- 10** Instrument cluster [164](#)
- 11** Buttons on steering wheel, right
-  Selection lists [179](#)
-  Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
-  Voice control system [61](#)



Changing the station/track, see the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)



Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

Knurled wheel for selection lists [179](#)

12 Steering-column lever, right



Wipers [155](#)



Rain sensor [156](#)



Cleaning windscreen and headlights [157](#)

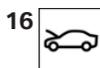


Horn, entire area

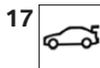


Steering wheel heating [127](#)

15 To adjust the steering wheel [127](#)



To release the bonnet [371](#)



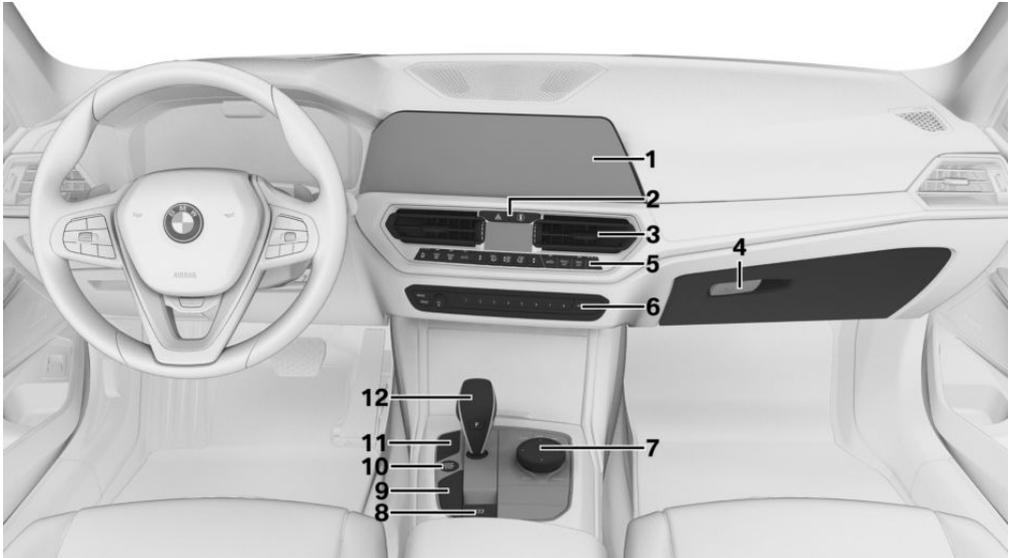
Opening and closing the boot lid [103](#)

18 Glove box [306](#)



Tank aeration [341](#)

Around the centre console



- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1 Control Display 56</p> | <p>9  Driving Experience Control 148
SPORT drive mode</p> |
| <p>2  Hazard warning lights 388</p> | <p> HYBRID driving mode</p> |
| <p> Intelligent Safety 198</p> | <p> ELECTRIC driving mode</p> |
| <p>3 Ventilation 296</p> | <p> ADAPTIVE drive mode</p> |
| <p>4 Glove box 305</p> | <p>10  To switch drive-ready state on/off 147</p> |
| <p>5 Automatic air conditioning 291</p> | <p>11  BATTERY CONTROL 144 driving mode</p> |
| <p>6 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8</p> | <p> Park Distance Control, PDC 263
Without Surround View: rear-view camera 267
Surround View 270
Crossing traffic warning 283
Park Assistant 277</p> |
| <p>7 Controller with buttons 56</p> | |
| <p>8  Parking brake 151</p> | |
| <p> Automatic Hold 152</p> | |



Surround View: Panorama View 270

12 Steptronic transmission: selector lever 158



Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 237

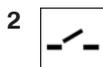
Around the roof lining



Emergency call, SOS 390



Reading lights 192



Operating the electric glass roof 112



Interior light 192



Front passenger airbag indicator lamp 197

Vehicle operating state

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Rest state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Rest state

Principle

When the vehicle is in rest state, it is switched off. All electrical consumers are deactivated.

General

The vehicle is in rest state before you open it from outside and once you have left the vehicle and locked it.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Automatic rest state

The vehicle switches automatically to rest state under the following conditions:

- ▷ After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.

- ▷ When the battery state of charge is low.
- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, if one of the front doors is opened, depending on the iDrive setting.

Rest state is not established automatically during a telephone call.

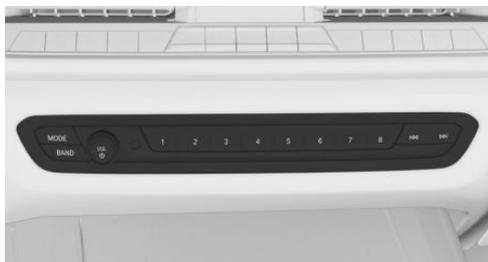
Establishing rest state on opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Manual rest state

To establish rest state in the vehicle at the end of a journey:



Press and hold the button, until the OFF display on the instrument cluster turns off.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still stationary. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle switches to standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

There are the following versions of drive-ready state:

- ▷ Electric drive-ready state, see page 51.
The vehicle is driven by the electric motor.
- ▷ Starting the internal combustion engine, see page 51.
The vehicle is driven by the internal combustion engine.

Safety notes

⚠ DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ WARNING

With electric driving, pedestrians and other road-users might not detect the vehicle as well as usual due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to

the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Close driver's door.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for dif-

ferent lengths of time, depending on the duration of the system check.

Depending on the preconditions, electric drive-ready state or starting the internal combustion engine is possible.

Electric drive-ready state

General

The vehicle is ready to drive without starting the internal combustion engine.

Operating requirements

Electric drive-ready state is possible if the preconditions for electric driving, see page 144, are met.

Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is switched on, READY is shown in the instrument cluster.

Internal combustion engine start

Operating requirements

The internal combustion engine is started when drive-ready state is switched on, see page 51, under the following preconditions:

- ▷ Temperature of the hybrid system is too high or too low.
- ▷ Charge level of the high-voltage battery is too low.

Switching off drive-ready state

After stopping:

1. Engage the selector lever in position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Apply the parking brake.



When shutting down the vehicle, operating noises of the hybrid system, for example, cooling of the high-voltage battery, may be audible.

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive comprises a wide range of functions. These functions can be operated using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, the touchscreen, voice control system or Gesture Control.

Safety note

WARNING

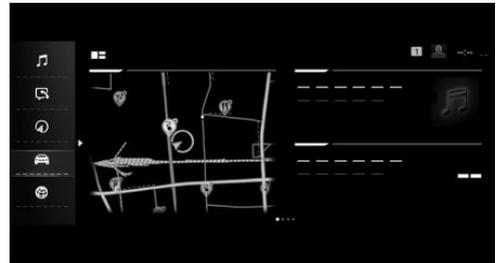
Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Entry and display

Main menu

General

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

 All of the entertainment system functions, for example radio and TV stations, connection with external devices and music collection.

Communication

 Telephone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

 Access to navigation system, destination entry and traffic information. Configurable map views as well as other functions such as Points of Interest and avoid areas.

My vehicle

 Information on vehicle status and journeys. Access to the integrated Owner's Handbook as

well as management of driver profiles and setting options for the vehicle and iDrive.

Apps

 Management and access to apps as well as vehicle functions. Additional apps can be obtained from the BMW Store.

Widgets

 Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The defined widgets display dynamic content – for example, the navigation map – and also serve as buttons.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment, using the touchscreen, voice control system or Gesture Control. The keyboard display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc or ABC	Switch between upper and lower case.
	To enter a space.
	To use the voice control.
OK	To confirm your entry.
	Move the entry area to the left or right.
	

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter and character entered.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.

- ▶ Only letters and characters for which data is available are offered for entry.

- ▶ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available in iDrive.

Enabling/disabling functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Function is enabled.

Function is disabled.

Status information

General

The status field is located in the top area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Symbols for telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network.
	Searching for network.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Critical charge state of the mobile telephone reached.
	Data transfer not possible.
	Roaming active.
	Location active.
	Text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Symbols for entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Online Entertainment.
	WLAN.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output switched off.
	Determining the current vehicle position.
	Traffic information.
	Driver profile.
	Messages.
	Service requirements.
	Information.
	Stop.
	Data protection.

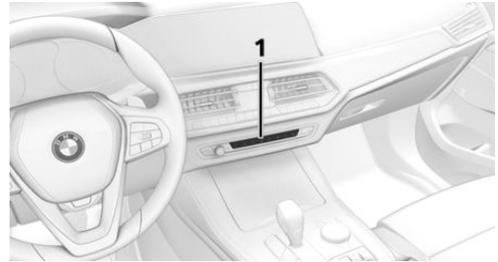
Favourites buttons

General

iDrive functions, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts to the menu or pages of the Integrated Owner's Handbook, can be saved to Favourites buttons and called up directly.

The settings are saved for the current driver profile.

Overview



- 1 Favourites buttons

Saving a function

A function can be saved to a Favourites button. A button that has already been assigned a function can be overwritten with a different function.

1. Select function via iDrive.
2.  Press and hold the desired button until the bar shown on the Control Display has fully loaded.

Performing a function

- 1...8  Press the button.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number for example, the connection will also be established.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Removing all button assignments

It is possible to remove the assignments of all buttons.

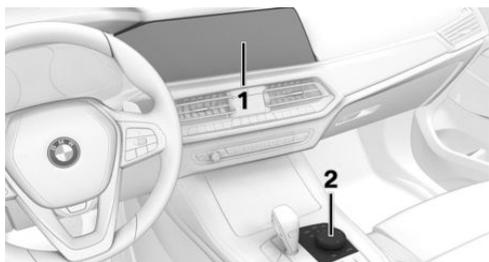
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Principle

The iDrive functions are shown on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad and touch screen.

Overview



- 1 Control Display with touchscreen
- 2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety note

NOTE

Objects located in front of the Control Display may slip and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place objects in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically after unlocking.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for example if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, the brightness may be reduced and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

Controller

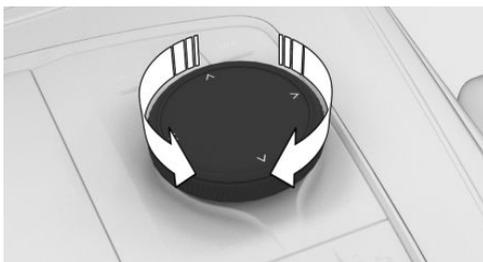
General

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and perform settings.

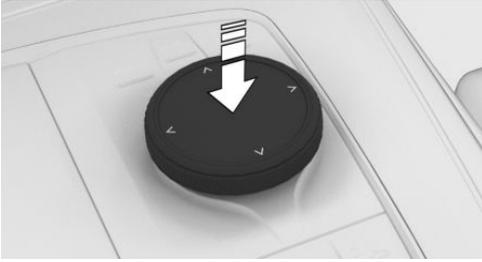
Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Operation

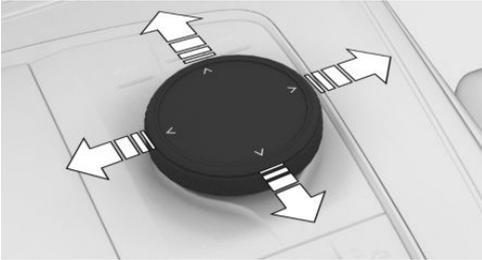
- ▶ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



- ▶ Press to select a menu item, for example.



- ▶ Tilt in four directions to switch between screens, for example.



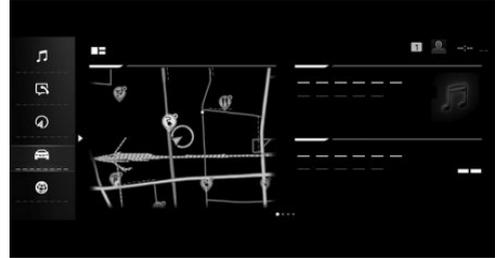
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	To call up the main menu.
	To call up the Apps menu.
	To call up the Communication menu.
	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
	To call up the navigation map.
	To call up the previous screen.
	To call up the Options menu.

Operation using the Controller

Calling up the main menu

 Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Selecting widgets

1. Tilt the Controller to the right.
2. Select widgets.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adapting the menu

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.



Via iDrive:

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tilt the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adaptation:
 - ▷ Add a new widget: select the **+** symbol and the desired widget.
The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
 - ▷ Delete the selected widget: select the **X** symbol.
 - ▷ Add a new page: "Add page".
 - ▷ Delete the selected page: "Delete page".
 - ▷ Adapt the widget content: select the widget.
5. "Done"

Adapt the menu content

The display of the "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" menus can be adapted, for example to remove the entries for unused functions from the menu.

Via iDrive:

1. Select menu.
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the menu content that is intended to be displayed.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "Settings", a new screen is displayed.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.
The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.

- ▷  Press the button.

The previous screen is opened again.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

The new screen is opened.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

Calling up the Options menu



Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Help for selected menu; for example "Help".
- ▷ System settings; for example "Switch off screen".
- ▷ Operating options for the selected main menu, for example for "Media/Radio".

Adjusting the settings

Settings such as brightness can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

1. Turn the Controller: to select letters or numbers.
2. **OK** : to confirm your entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
	Press the Controller: to delete letters or numbers.
	Press and hold the Controller: to delete all letters or numbers.

Operating alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries are available can be displayed in a letter field.

1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
2. Select the initial letter of the desired entry.
The first entry for the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Selecting functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Character input": to enter letters and numbers.
 - ▷ "Map": to operate the map.
 - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
 - ▷ "Audio confirmation": to have the entered letters and numbers read out.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, for example accents or dots, so that the letter can be clearly identified.
- ▷ The input options depend on the language that has been set. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.

Entering special characters

Entry	Operation
To delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
To enter a space.	From the centre of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter a hyphen.	At the top of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter an underscore.	At the bottom of the touchpad, swipe to the right.

Operating map

The map of the navigation system can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	On the touchpad, pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Operation by touchscreen

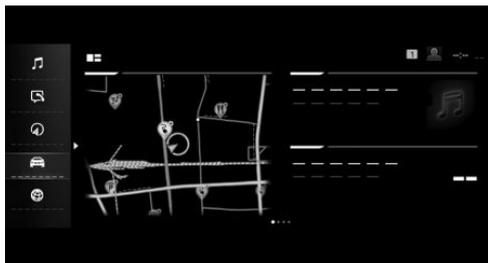
General

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

It is possible to tap menu items and widgets. Touch the touchscreen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Calling up the main menu

Tap the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tap the  symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adaptation:
 - ▷ Add a new widget: tap the  symbol and select the desired widget.
The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
 - ▷ Delete the selected widget: tap the  symbol.

- ▷ Add a new page: tap "Add page".
- ▷ Delete the selected page: tap "Delete page".
- ▷ Adapt the content of the widget: tap the centre of the widget.

4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

At the top edge of the screen, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, a new screen is displayed.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap the arrow.

The new screen is opened.

Adjusting the settings

Settings such as brightness can be made using the touchscreen.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▷ Move to the right or left until the required setting is displayed.
 - ▷   Tap the symbol.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

1.  Tap the symbol on the touchscreen.
A keyboard appears on the Control Display.
2. Enter letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
	Tap the symbol: to delete letter or number.
	Tap and hold the symbol: to delete all letters or numbers.

Operating the map

The navigation map can be moved via the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Voice control system

Principle

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system provides spoken announcements to assist you with input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook.

General

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice control system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▷ ›...‹ indicates commands for the voice control system.

Operating requirements

- ▷ A language must be set using iDrive that is supported by the voice control system. To select the language, see page 74.
- ▷ Always say the commands in the language of the voice control system.

Activating the voice control system

General

Voice control can be activated in various ways:

- ▷  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.

Then say the command. It is possible that no further spoken commands are available. In this case, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Voice control can be interrupted:

- ▷  Press the button on the steering wheel again or ›Cancel‹.

Button on the steering wheel

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.



This symbol on the Control Display shows that the voice control system is active.

Wake word

General

Saying the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ starts the system. Voice control can be continued with voice commands immediately afterwards.

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹.
2. Say the command.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word "Hello BMW" can be activated and deactivated. The ›Hello BMW‹ option activates the preset and personal wake word.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Say "Hello BMW" for activation"

Personalised wake word

A personalised wake word can be set in addition to the preset wake word "Hello BMW".

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Personal activation word"
6. "Start recording"

For the "Start recording" option, online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.

7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General

Most of the contents on the Control Display can be said as commands; for example, menu items or list entries. When doing this, say the list entries as they are shown in the list.

Commands and numbers should be spoken fluently, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.

The voice recognition status is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Functional examples

Menu items

The commands for the menu items are spoken in the same way as they are selected using the Controller.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Media and radio‹
3. ›Saved stations‹

The saved stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

The voice control system can be used to enter destinations in the navigation. It is also possible to state Points of Interest or have traffic messages read aloud.

- ▷ ›Drive me to 1 High Street in Manchester‹.
- ▷ ›Take me home‹.
- ▷ ›Are there any traffic messages?‹

Communication

When a mobile telephone is connected, it is possible to start calls or send SMS messages, for example, using the voice control system.

- ▷ ›Call John Smith on the mobile phone‹.
- ▷ ›Dial the number 0370 505 0160‹.

- ▶ ›New text message to John Smith: I'm on my way‹.

Media and radio

Most radio functions can be operated by voice commands.

- ▶ ›Switch on music‹.
- ▶ ›Music off‹.
- ▶ ›Next track‹.

Air conditioning

Most air conditioning functions can be operated by voice commands.

- ▶ ›Activate climate control‹.
- ▶ ›Deactivate ... air recirculation‹.
- ▶ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹.

Help with the voice control system

- ▶ To have possible voice commands read aloud, say: ›Voice commands‹.
- ▶ To have information about the voice control system read aloud: ›General information on voice control‹.
- ▶ To have help on the current menu read aloud: ›Help‹.

Information for emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, a person's speech and voice pitch can change. This could unnecessarily delay connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button, see page [390](#), located near the rear-view mirror.

Settings

Selecting the language

The language to be used for voice control and system announcements can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired language.

Selecting the speech dialogue

You can select whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant.

If the short variant is selected, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Voice control"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer while the voice control system is querying your previous spoken instruction. The function can be deactivated if the queries are frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or people speaking.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing enables use of the dictation function, facilitates the natural input of destinations and improves the quality of voice



recognition. To use the function, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

- ▶ The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.
- ▶ The volume setting is saved for the current driver profile.

System limits

- ▶ Certain noises may be detected and could result in problems. Keep doors, windows and the Glass Roof closed.
- ▶ Noise from passengers or the rear bench may interfere with the system. Avoid background noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.
- ▶ Strong dialects may prevent voice recognition from working properly. Speak loudly and clearly.

Using the voice control system on the smartphone

A smartphone connected to the vehicle can be operated via voice control.

This requires voice control to be activated on the smartphone.

1.  Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.
Voice control on the smartphone is activated.

2.  Release the button.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

If it was not possible to activate voice control, the list of Bluetooth devices appears on the Control Display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. Amazon Alexa Car Integration enables Alexa to be used in the vehicle.

General

Some of Alexa's functions may only work to a limited extent in the vehicle to ensure they do not create a safety risk when driving.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Amazon Alexa Car Integration acquired via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▶ The same ConnectedDrive account is used in the vehicle as in the BMW Connected app.
- ▶ Vehicle is linked in the BMW Connected app.
- ▶ Amazon account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- ▶ Bluetooth connection or USB connection between vehicle and mobile device is active.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

Authorisation to use Amazon Alexa Car Integration needs to be provided before the start of each journey.

1. Authorising Amazon Alexa Car Integration:

- ▶ Pair the mobile device with the vehicle via Bluetooth.
 - ▶ Select a driver profile, see page 78.
2. Say the activation word "Alexa" and the required command.
- Information about the active function appears on the Control Display.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, stop the vehicle and restart the engine.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant expands the voice control function to include additional functions and improves interaction in the vehicle.

General

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The Personal Assistant is operated using spoken commands. Voice operation is supplemented with personalised recommendations and messages, automated habits, and intelligent functions.

The Personal Assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge Service and is continually being developed. An active driver profile is required to access the full scope of functions.

There are two versions of BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant:

- ▶ Basic: always available. This version is linked to a single vehicle and cannot be personalised. Not all the functions described are available in full.
- ▶ Personalised: available to purchase from the ConnectedDrive Store. This version can be used in various vehicles and can be personal-

ised. All the functions described are available in full.

Operating requirements

The driver profile is activated.

Activate the following settings for the full extent of applications:

- ▶ "Online speech processing".
- ▶ "Synchronise driver profile" under "Personalisation" in the data protection menu.
- ▶ All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" in the data protection menu.

Functional example

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.
2. ›Is my engine oil level still OK?‹
The Personal Assistant provides information about the engine oil level.

Settings

Situational adjustment

General

Depending on the situation, various states can be activated.

State	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Deactivate learning"	Habits are no longer learned.
"Passenger on board"	Personalised version: private information – in e-mails, for example – is not displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant"

3. Select the desired setting.

Automating habits

General

The Personal Assistant is able to learn habits; for example, automatically activating the steering wheel heating once a certain outside temperature is reached. This involves creating rules that can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating rules

1. "APPS"
2. "BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant"
3. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Caring Car

General

A short program harmonises various vehicle functions in the interior with one another. A program lasts for 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be ended prematurely:

"End programme"

Owner's Handbook by voice control

Principle

It is possible to ask simple questions about the vehicle functions and about operating the vehicle.

General

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook. The voice recog-

nition function and the quality of the feedback may vary.

The system support questions starting with "How" or "What".

Functional example

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. >How do you disable the front passenger airbag<

The voice control system provides feedback. If applicable, the section of the integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed on the Control Display while at a standstill.

BMW Gesture Control

Principle

BMW Gesture Control enables some iDrive functions to be operated simply by moving your hands.

Overview



The camera in the roof lining detects gestures made in the area of the centre console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Display user help": the possible gesture is displayed on the Control Display.
 - ▷ "Audio confirmation": an audible signal is output when the gesture is recognised.

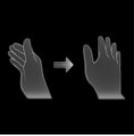
Performing gestures

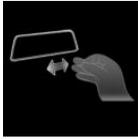
Perform the gestures under the rear-view window and to the side of the steering wheel.

Perform the gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be performed by the front passenger.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move your index finger forward in the direction of the screen and back again.	Accept phone call. Select highlighted entry of a list during voice control. Confirm the pop-up.
	Move your hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject phone call. Close the pop-up. End voice control.
	Slowly move your hand in a clockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	The volume is increased.
	Slowly move your hand anticlockwise with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	The volume is reduced.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	<p>Pinch your thumb and index finger together and move your hand horizontally right or left.</p>	<p>Surround View: rotate camera view. This gesture is only possible with the vehicle at standstill.</p>
	<p>Move your index and middle fingers apart and extend them forwards.</p>	<p>Individually assignable gesture. Possible functions: Mute. Control Display on/off. Voice control.</p>
	<p>With your thumb stretched out to the left, move your fist back and forth.</p>	<p>Skip function backwards. The previous music track is played.</p>
	<p>With your thumb stretched out to the right, move your fist back and forth.</p>	<p>Skip function forwards. The next music track is played.</p>
	<p>Stretch out all five fingers, make a fist and then stretch out all five fingers again.</p>	<p>Individually assignable gesture. Possible functions: Route guidance to home address. Messages. Recent calls.</p>

Assign gesture individually

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Detection of gestures by the camera in the roof lining can be disrupted under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The camera lens is covered.
- ▶ There are objects on the rear-view mirror.
- ▶ The camera lens is contaminated. Cleaning camera lenses, see page 400.
- ▶ The gesture is performed outside the detection area.
- ▶ Wearing of gloves or jewellery.
- ▶ Smoking in the interior.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

The Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the vehicle software. The Remote Software Upgrade provides new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements.

General

BMW recommends carrying out the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available.

For safety reasons, it is only possible to install the downloaded upgrade while at a standstill. The installation will not begin until it has been confirmed at the vehicle.

- ▶ Installation can take around 20 minutes.
- ▶ Installation cannot be interrupted.
- ▶ The vehicle cannot be used during installation.
- ▶ You may leave the vehicle during installation.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Operating requirements

An active ConnectedDrive contract is required in order to use the Remote Software Upgrade.

Version information

General

The version information describes the updates contained in the Remote Software Upgrade. The version information can be shown on the Control Display during the download and following successful completion of the installation. The information is available at all times in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying the version information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"



Safety note

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Searching for and downloading an upgrade

General

There are various ways of searching for and downloading an upgrade:

- ▷ Automatically.
- ▷ Via iDrive.
- ▷ Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available. There is no need to approve the download.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"

5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the upgrade to your smartphone in the BMW Connected app when available.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish a WiFi and Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle simultaneously.

The upgrade data will only transfer from the smartphone to the vehicle while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Installing an upgrade

General

If the upgrade has downloaded successfully, it can be installed once the vehicle has been parked. The installation can be carried out immediately after download or later on.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Following a successful upgrade, booked services – for example RTTI – are automatically activated again while driving.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Adequate charge state of the battery.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above — 10 °C/14 °F.
- ▷ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▷ Hazard warning lights switched off.
- ▷ Transmission position P is engaged.
- ▷ Engine is sufficiently cooled.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle in a safe place off the public roads.

- ▶ Make sure there is mobile phone reception so that an error message can be sent if the installation is cancelled, for example.
- ▶ Close the windows.
- ▶ Close the Glass Roof.
- ▶ Close the boot lid.
- ▶ Remove devices that consume energy, for example mobile telephone.
- ▶ The vehicle key is in the vehicle to start the installation.
- ▶ Switch off the exterior lights.

Other vehicle-dependent operating requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Installing an upgrade later

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, many of the functions are temporarily unavailable, for example:

- ▶ Hazard warning lights.
- ▶ Central locking system.
- ▶ Side lights.
- ▶ Horn.
- ▶ Alarm system.
- ▶ Emergency call.
- ▶ Power window switches.
- ▶ Glass Roof.
- ▶ Locking of the fuel filler flap.

The driver's door can be unlocked and locked from outside with the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be rectified, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Messages

Principle

The menu shows all messages received by the vehicle, centrally in the form of a list.

General

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Service requirement messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- ▷ Messages from the Concierge Service or the BMW Connected app, for example.
- ▷ Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is also displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as a widget.

Calling up messages

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.

2. "Notifications"
3. Select the required message.

Deleting messages

All messages which are not Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer remain for as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message; for example, SMS.
4.  Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
▷ "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be performed:

- ▷ Selection of applications from which messages are permitted.
- ▷ All messages or a limited period of received messages.

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Automatic time setting

Depending on the equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Alter the setting for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Language

Selecting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language:"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the speech dialogue

Speech dialogue for the voice control system, see page 63.

Selecting the units of measurement

Depending on the country specifications, it is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example consumption, distances and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Journey data settings

Principle

The intervals at which the journey data is reset can be adjusted.

Resetting journey data

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset journey data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Principle

A speed limit can be set which triggers a warning when it is reached.

General

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below 5 km/h/3 mph.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting the current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

The instrument cluster contains a camera which monitors the driver's activity. The camera evaluates the head position and opening of the eyes in order to analyse the attentiveness of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, for example:

- ▶ Attentiveness assistant.
- ▶ Steering and lane control assistant with Assisted Driving Plus.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- ▶ If the driver is wearing sunglasses that block infrared light.

Activating/deactivating information windows

Information windows are automatically shown on the Control Display for some functions. Some of these information windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Activating/deactivating display of the current vehicle position

Principle

If vehicle tracking is activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "App Connected and cust. portal"
Select the desired setting.



Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness adjustment may not be immediately apparent.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If the settings saved in a driver profile are synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, these settings will be retained in the ConnectedDrive account.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider. The transfer of data can be deactivated for some services.

General

If data transfer has been deactivated for a service, then that service cannot be used.

Only perform settings with the vehicle at a standstill.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured individually in various stages or for individual services.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, data such as the following can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Saved Favourites buttons.
- ▷ Trip and on-board computer values.
- ▷ Music hard disc.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example Favourites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for example voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.

It may take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data.

Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.

Deleting data

Personal data in the vehicle is deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

Reset the vehicle to its factory settings, see page 76.

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be created in order to store personalised vehicle settings. If multiple drivers use a vehicle, each driver can create a personalised driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the vehicle automatically adopts the settings stored in the driver profile.

General

You can create three personal driver profiles.

There is also a guest profile available which can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active if no personal driver profile has been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are saved automatically in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

Recognition via a vehicle key and a digital key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle settings are adjusted to the relevant driver as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. As soon as the vehicle key or the digital key is detected by the vehicle, the relevant driver profile is activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings saved in the driver profile can be synchronised with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Operating requirements

If the driver profile is changed, the vehicle cannot move at any more than walking speed.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen is shown once the Control Display is switched on.

The following actions can be performed on the welcome screen:

- ▷ Switch the driver profile.
- ▷ Start the setup assistant.

This option is offered for a limited time in new vehicles.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the welcome screen disappears.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered on the welcome screen in new vehicles for a limited time in order to define the key settings for the vehicle.

Select "Getting started" to start the setup assistant.

The setup assistant can be started at any time using iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided through the following functions step by step:

- ▷ Set the system language.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries:
 - If the setup assistant has been called up in the guest profile: create the driver profile.
- ▷ Register mobile devices with the vehicle.
- ▷ If the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile: set up the Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Depending on whether the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the declaration regarding the transfer of vehicle data.
- ▷ Set up other operating methods.

The selected settings are saved in the active driver profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are made when the guest profile is active are saved in the guest profile.

The guest profile is automatically active in the following cases:

- ▶ No driver profiles have been created yet.
- ▶ No driver profile is assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.
- ▶ No driver profile is assigned to the digital key used to unlock the vehicle.

The following restrictions apply:

- ▶ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▶ Recognition cannot be assigned to the guest profile.
- ▶ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▶ ConnectedDrive countries: Synchronisation with a ConnectedDrive account is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"

2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

3. "Guest"

4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

A driver profile is created via iDrive:

1. "CAR"

2. "Driver profiles"

3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Add driver profile"

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. If there is no existing ConnectedDrive account, it is possible to create one using a smartphone. A QR code is displayed on the Control

Display for this purpose. It is possible to continue creating the driver profile using the login details for the ConnectedDrive account that has been created.

Selecting recognition

The recognition setting is made via iDrive:

1. "CAR"

2. "Driver profiles"

3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"

5. Select the desired setting:

- ▶ "with vehicle key"

The vehicle key that is detected in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple vehicle keys are detected, the unwanted vehicle keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.

- ▶ "With Digital Key"

The digital key that is detected in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple digital keys are detected, the unwanted digital keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.

6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle key or the digital key is detected by the vehicle, the relevant driver profile is activated. If the driver does not have the vehicle key or the smartphone with the digital key with him/her, or if the vehicle key or digital key is not detected, the driver profile can only be selected on the welcome screen if PIN protection has been set up.

Setting up PIN protection

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without a vehicle key and without a digital key. In this case, it is possible to set up PIN pro-

tection that can be used to activate the driver profile.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If PIN protection has not been set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If PIN protection has not been set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile can be activated with the login details for the relevant ConnectedDrive account.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/cancelling recognition

If a different vehicle key or a different digital key needs to be assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be cancelled first.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
or
"With Digital Key"
6. "Activate linkage"

If the vehicle and the vehicle key are to be handed over for a service, for example, the following steps should be carried out first:

- ▶ Set up PIN protection.

- ▶ Cancel recognition via the vehicle key.
- ▶ Switch to the guest profile.

This means the vehicle key that is handed over can no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

The driver profile is selected automatically based on the recognition of the key/remote control.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may need to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

3. Select a driver profile.
4. "OK"

The settings saved in the selected driver profile are applied automatically.

Switching synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings saved in the driver profile are synchronised with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, provided that this function is supported.

Synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronise driver profile"
6. "Synchronise driver profile"

Renaming the driver profile

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

The name assigned when setting up the driver profile can be changed via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

3. Select a driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. **OK** Select the symbol.

Selecting a profile picture

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available:
The profile picture is taken from the ConnectedDrive portal or the BMW Connected app.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting a driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Remove now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile has been synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, the data saved in the ConnectedDrive account is retained.

System limits

It is not always possible to detect the desired vehicle key uniquely. This may be the case in the following scenarios, for example:

- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- ▷ If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- ▷ If a number of vehicle keys are located in the area outside of the vehicle, on the driver's side.

ConnectedDrive countries:

It is only possible to create a driver profile and synchronise it with the ConnectedDrive account if mobile telephone reception is available.

Using the personal settings saved in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to certain technical restrictions. For example, there may be stored settings for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or only in an incompatible version.

Connections

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various types of connection are available in the vehicle for using mobile devices. Which connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the function you wish to use.

General

The following lists show possible functions and the appropriate connection types for them. The level of functionality depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls using the hands-free system.	Bluetooth.
Operating telephone functions via iDrive or touchscreen.	
Other functions, for example contacts or SMS.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.

Function	Connection type
USB storage medium: Music playback.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB device.	USB.
Using the vehicle's Internet access.	WiFi hotspot over WLAN.
Operate Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and by voice commands.	Bluetooth and WLAN.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.

The following connection types require a one-off registration process with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ WiFi hotspot.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring.

Registered devices are then automatically recognised and connected to the vehicle.

Safety note

WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Compatible devices

General

Information about mobile devices compatible with the vehicle is available at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur when using unlisted devices or different software versions.

Viewing the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, the vehicle identification number and software part number may have to be stated. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth information"
6. "System information"

Bluetooth connection

Operating requirements

- ▶ Compatible device, see page 83, with Bluetooth interface.
- ▶ The vehicle key is in the vehicle.
- ▶ The device is operational.
- ▶ Bluetooth is activated on the device and switched on in the vehicle.
- ▶ The Control Display indicates that the system is ready for registration.
- ▶ The device may require certain Bluetooth default settings, for example visibility; see the user manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth"
6. Select the setting.

Enabling/disabling telephone functions

To be able to use all supported functions of a mobile telephone, the desired functions may need to be activated in the vehicle before registering the mobile telephone with the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for example "Text messages".

Registering the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number on

the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.

8. Select Bluetooth connection if necessary: "Use BMW iDrive for phone calls, Bluetooth audio and apps."

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the pre-conditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Nevertheless, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

Why could the mobile telephone not be paired or connected?

- ▶ Too many Bluetooth devices are paired to the mobile telephone or the vehicle.
In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.
Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile telephone and start a new device search.
Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are registered.
- ▶ The mobile telephone is in power-save mode or the battery is low.
Charge the mobile telephone and deactivate power-save mode if necessary.

Why does the mobile telephone no longer respond?

- ▶ The applications on the mobile telephone are no longer functioning.
Switch the mobile telephone off and on again.
- ▶ Ambient temperature too high or too low to operate the mobile telephone.
Do not subject the mobile telephone to extreme ambient conditions.

Why can telephone functions not be operated via iDrive?

- ▶ No telephone functions are configured for the mobile telephone.
Connect the mobile telephone with the telephone function.

Why are no phone book entries, not all entries or incomplete entries displayed?

- ▶ The transfer of the phone book entries is not yet completed.
- ▶ Under certain circumstances only the phone book entries saved in the mobile telephone or on the SIM card are transferred.
- ▶ It is possible that phone book entries with special characters cannot be displayed.
- ▶ It may not be possible to transfer contacts from social networks.
- ▶ The number of phone book entries to be transferred is too high.
- ▶ The data volume of the contact is too large, for example due to saved information such as memos.
Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▶ A mobile telephone can only be connected as an audio source or as a telephone.
Configure the mobile telephone and connect it to the telephone function.
- ▶ A contact was created in the telephone contact list after the last synchronisation.
Re-synchronise the contacts: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▶ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile telephone; the procedure varies from mobile telephone to mobile telephone.
- ▶ Insert the mobile telephone in the wireless charging dock.
- ▶ Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all the points on the list have been reviewed and the desired function cannot be performed, contact the Hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

USB connection

General

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- ▷ Mobile telephones.
- ▷ Audio devices, for example MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. Formats FAT32 and exFAT are recommended.

A connected USB device is charged via the USB interface if the device supports this. Note the maximum charging current of the USB interface.

The following can be done at USB interfaces compatible with data transfer:

- ▷ Playback of music files.
- ▷ Playback of video films.

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not use force when inserting the plug into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device from mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every device.
- ▷ Do not expose the USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, for example very high temperatures; see the operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of different compression techniques, correct playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in every case.

- ▷ To ensure correct transfer of the stored data, do not charge a USB device from the socket in the vehicle when the device is also connected to the USB interface.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB device is being used, it may be necessary to perform settings on the USB device; see the operating instructions of the device.

Unsuitable USB devices:

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card reader with several slots.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.

Operating requirements

Compatible device, see page 83, with USB interface.

Connecting a device

Connect the USB device to a USB interface, see page 303, using a suitable adapter cable.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

WiFi hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with a WLAN interface can use the vehicle's Internet connection via the WiFi hotspot.

General

Up to 10 devices can be connected at the same time using the WiFi hotspot.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, see page 83, with activated WiFi interface.
- ▷ WiFi is activated in the vehicle.
- ▷ Internet usage is activated in the vehicle.

- ▷ Registration and, if necessary, data contract with a service provider.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via a WiFi hotspot

Registration will be required and a data volume may need to be purchased from a service provider when you first connect to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot.

Data volumes can be purchased via the connected mobile telephone or the ConnectedDrive Store, depending on the country version.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"
 - The hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WiFi if necessary. "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage. "Internet use"
8. Tilt the Controller to the left.
9. On the mobile device, search for WiFi networks. Select the network name on the device.
10. Enter the hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

A QR code is also displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

This data volume is used by all devices connected via the hotspot.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for example.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet use"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, see page 83.
 - iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Booking of the ConnectedDrive service: Apple CarPlay preparation.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Set the following setting: "Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Registering iPhone with CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.
A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select CarPlay:
"Confirm note and connect with Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For further information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook or the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the pre-conditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Nevertheless, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.

- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of saved connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the desired function still cannot be run: contact the hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Screen Mirroring

General

Screen Mirroring enables you to display your smartphone screen on the Control Display.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone, see page 83, with Screen Mirroring interface.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on in the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is switched on in the vehicle.

Switching on WLAN in the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "WiFi"

Registering the smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"

5.  "Screen Mirroring"

The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.

6. On the smartphone, search for WLAN devices in the vicinity.

The WLAN name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the device. Select WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Managing mobile devices

General

- ▶ Following one-off registration, the devices are automatically detected and connected again when the standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The data saved on the SIM card or in the mobile telephone – for example, contacts – is transferred to the vehicle following detection and can be used via iDrive.
- ▶ Some devices may require particular settings, for example authorisation; see the user manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices registered or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and 10 devices via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices can be detected.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates which function a device is used for. If the symbol is shown in white, there is an active connection to the vehicle with this function. The symbol is shown in grey when the device function is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WiFi hotspot.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Screen Mirroring.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated on a registered or connected device.

When a function is assigned to a device, where necessary it is disabled on a device that is already connected and that device is disconnected. Observe the information on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the required device.
4. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Disconnect device"

The device remains registered and can be connected again.
 - ▶ "Connect device"

Functions assigned to the device before disconnection are reassigned to the device upon reconnection. If applicable, these functions are deactivated for an already connected device.
 - ▶ "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and deleted from the device list.

Telephone priority

If two mobile telephones are connected to the vehicle, it is possible to define reconnection priorities for them.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephony"
6. Select the required device.
7. Turn the Controller to set the priority for the selected mobile telephone.

Move to select the desired priority.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Vehicle key

General

The delivery specification includes two vehicle keys with integrated keys.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery. Various settings are possible for the button functions, depending on the equipment and the national-market version.

A driver profile with personalised settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is saved in the vehicle key.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, take it with you whenever you leave the vehicle.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a danger

of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

On some country variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge. There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

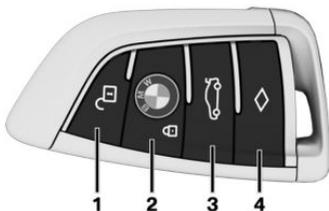
WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 To lock
- 3 Without automatic operation of the tailgate:
opening the boot lid
With automatic tailgate operation: to open/
close boot lid
- 4 Function adjustable:
Headlight courtesy delay feature, standing air
conditioning

Unlocking

General

The vehicle's response when unlocked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings for locking and unlocking:

- ▷ Whether only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all vehicle access points are unlocked when the button is first pressed.
- ▷ Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door has been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▷ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile is activated and the settings saved in it are configured.
- ▷ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.
- ▷ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched off.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched off.

The vehicle is operational after one of the front doors is opened.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

For comfort



Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Exterior mirrors which were folded in via the comfort closing feature are folded out.

To lock

General

The vehicle's response when locked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in and out when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.
- ▷ Whether the headlight courtesy delay feature is activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the  button on the vehicle key.

Following functions are carried out:

- ▷ All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
- ▷ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. In this case, switch off the drive-ready state using start/stop button.

Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a danger of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing

-  Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows, the Glass Roof and the sun guard are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Switching on the interior light and exterior lights

-  With the vehicle locked, press the button on the vehicle key.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- ▷ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually. To switch the interior light on/off manually, see page 192.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, the exterior lights, see page 187, are switched on.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

It is possible to set whether the doors are unlocked when the boot lid is opened with the vehicle key. For settings, see page 107.

Safety notes

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Opening



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

On some equipment versions, the doors are also unlocked each time.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid has closed.

Releasing the button stops the closing operation. If the doors were not unlocked, the boot lid is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature

The headlight courtesy delay function must be set for the button on the vehicle key. For settings, see page 108.

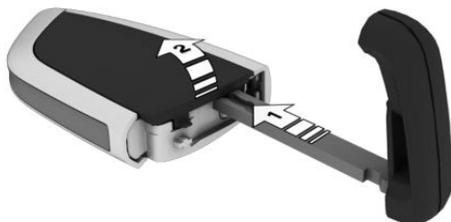


Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the headlight courtesy delay feature, see page 187.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key, see page 94.
2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and pry off the cover with a lever motion of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Use a pointed object to push the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.



4. Insert a new type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

If a driver profile has been assigned to the lost vehicle key, the connection to this vehicle key must be removed. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General

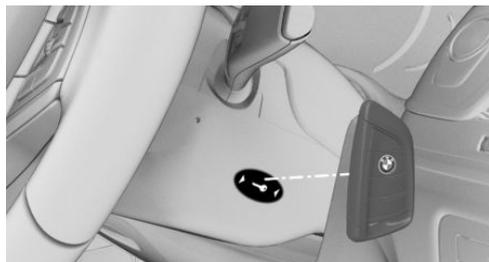
A Check Control message is shown.

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- ▶ Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- ▶ The vehicle key is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging dock.
Place the vehicle key somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, see page 94.

Switching on drive-ready state via the special ID feature of the vehicle key



Drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the vehicle key has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the rear side of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:
Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not detected, change the position of the vehicle key slightly and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What provisions can be made to enable a vehicle to be opened if the vehicle key has accidentally been locked inside the vehicle?

- ▶ The Remote Services of the BMW Connected app can be used to lock and unlock a vehicle.
This requires an active BMW Connected-Drive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- ▶ Unlocking of the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.
This requires an active BMW Connected-Drive contract.

Integrated key

General

With the integrated key, the driver's door can be unlocked and locked without the vehicle key.

The integrated key also fits in the glove box.

Use the integrated key to operate the key switch for front passenger airbags.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

On some country variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

 **NOTE**

The door lock is firmly connected to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the integrated key. There is a risk of material damage. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.

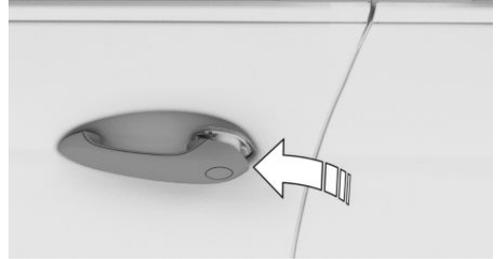
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Unlocking/locking using the door lock

1. Pull the door handle outwards with one hand and hold it.

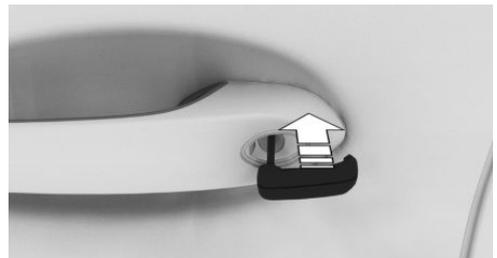


2. Slide one finger of your other hand under the cover from behind and push the cover outwards.

Support the cover with your thumb, to stop it falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock with the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The switched-on alarm system is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Central locking buttons

General

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

Overview



Central locking buttons.

To lock



Press the button with the front doors closed.

Locking does not activate the vehicle's anti-theft protection system.

Unlocking



Press the button.

Opening

- ▶  Press the button to unlock all the doors together.

Pull the door opener above the armrest.

- ▶ Turn the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

General

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▶ Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the door handle.
- ▶ Comfort closing.
- ▶ Contactless vehicle unlocking and locking.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission: unlocking and locking the vehicle using the BMW Digital Key.
- ▶ Opening of the boot lid.
- ▶ Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid.

Operating requirements

- ▶ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- ▶ The vehicle can only be unlocked and locked again after approximately 2 seconds.

Unlocking

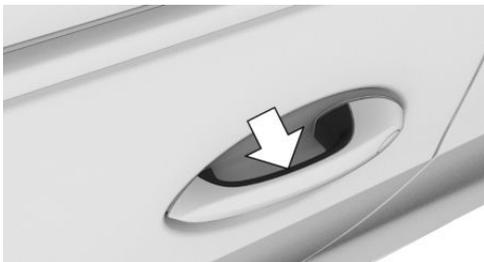
General

The behaviour of the vehicle when unlocked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▶ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Exterior mirrors folded in using the comfort closing feature must be folded out using the comfort opening feature.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

To lock

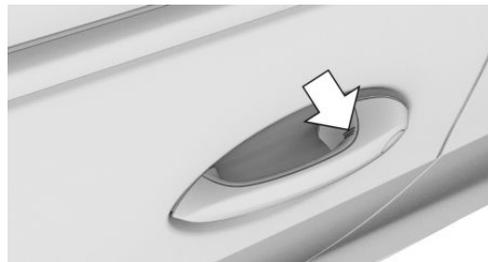
General

The behaviour of the vehicle when locked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▶ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.
- ▶ Whether the headlight courtesy delay feature is activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

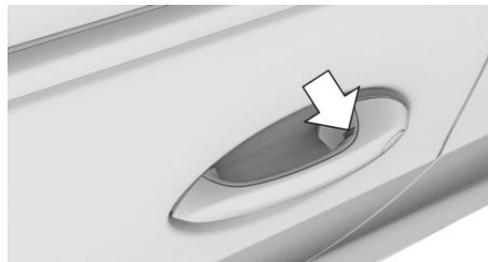
Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a danger of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing



With your finger, touch the knurled area on the handle of a closed vehicle door and keep your finger there without gripping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and the Glass Roof are closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

Opening the boot lid

General

If the boot lid is opened using Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

Safety notes

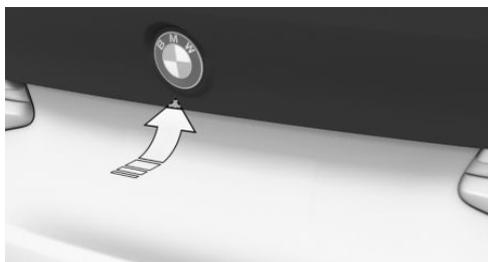
WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Opening



Press the button on the outside of the boot lid.

Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid

Principle

The boot lid can be opened contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you. With automatic operation of the tailgate, it can also be closed contactlessly. Two sensors detect a directed foot movement in the central rear area and the boot lid is opened or closed.

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the boot lid can be accidentally opened or closed by an unintentional or presumed foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If the boot lid is opened with a contactless method, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety notes

WARNING

When operating the boot lid contactlessly, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. There is a danger of injury. Make sure you are standing securely as you move your foot, and do not touch the vehicle.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move through the ranges of both sensors.

**Opening**

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash before the boot lid opens.

With automatic tailgate: Moving your foot again will stop the opening procedure, and moving it one more time after that will close the boot lid again.

Closing

Contactless closing of the boot lid is only possible with automatic operation of the boot lid.

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing operation, and moving it one more time after that will open the boot lid again.

Contactless vehicle unlocking and locking**Principle**

The vehicle is unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key. If the driver moves away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is locked.

General

The vehicle is unlocked when an authorised vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is an area with a radius of approximately 1 m, 3 ft from the door handles.

The vehicle is locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is an area with a radius of approximately 2 m, 7 ft from the door handles.

If the vehicle key remains within the unlocking zone without moving for a prolonged period of time, the vehicle is locked automatically.

If a person is detected on the front passenger seat during locking and if the front passenger's seat belt is in the belt buckle during locking:

- ▶ The vehicle is locked, but not protected against theft.
- ▶ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The behaviour of the vehicle in the case of contactless locking and unlocking depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether automatic unlocking is active.
- ▶ Whether automatic locking is active.
- ▶ Whether only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

Only driver's door and fuel filler flap: driver's door and fuel filler flap are only unlocked



when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

All vehicle access points: the vehicle is unlocked regardless of which side the driver approaches the vehicle from.

- ▷ Whether the locking and unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ Whether the headlight courtesy delay feature is activated when the vehicle is locked.
- ▷ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Drive-ready state must be switched off.
- ▷ Unlock: on entering the unlocking zone, the doors and boot lid must be closed.
- ▷ Lock: on leaving the locking zone, the doors and boot lid must be closed.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, it cannot be unlocked contactlessly. In this case, unlock the vehicle using the outside door handle.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been unlocked with the vehicle key, it cannot be locked contactlessly until the vehicle has been driven. In this case, lock the vehicle using the outside door handle.
- ▷ There must not be a second vehicle key within the locking zone in order to use contactless vehicle locking.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been in rest state for several days, contactless unlocking and locking are not possible until the vehicle has been driven.

Steptronic gearbox: BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows you to use a compatible smartphone, see page 83, to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

BMW Digital Key is country-specific and may be unavailable.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, a digital key must be installed on the smartphone. Digital keys are installed, managed and passed on via the BMW Connected app.

A driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone with a digital key, always have a vehicle key about your person too, so the vehicle can still be accessed even if the smartphone is not working. It is also useful to have the vehicle key about your person if the vehicle has to be handed over to another person or a service department. The vehicle key can then be handed over, instead of the smartphone.

Key card

The vehicle is delivered with a key card. The key card can be used in the same way as a compatible smartphone with a digital key.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the key card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

When you exit the vehicle, take the key card with you, as it can be used to start the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

Communication between the vehicle and the smartphone takes place via near field communication, NFC.

The vehicle is unlocked via the outer door handle on the driver's side. To register a digital key and

to start the engine, the smartphone must be placed in the smartphone dock.

A digital key is detected by the vehicle even if the smartphone is switched off.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▶ The BMW Connected app is installed on a compatible smartphone.
- ▶ The smartphone battery is sufficiently charged. The minimum battery charge required depends on the smartphone in question.
- ▶ A digital key for the vehicle is installed on the smartphone.
- ▶ BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle.

Proving authorisation

The vehicle owner must provide the Service Partner with evidence of his/her authorisation for the vehicle in order to use BMW Digital Key. It is possible to use the key card without proving authorisation.

The vehicle owner sets a Digital Key Code with the Service Partner so that digital keys can be transferred at a later date.

Acquiring digital keys

An initial digital key is provided in the BMW Connected app when the vehicle is purchased.

Additional digital keys can be acquired via the BMW ConnectedDrive Store. Acquiring digital keys may incur costs.

Digital keys have limited validity periods. The expiry date can be checked in the BMW Connected app and in the vehicle.

If a digital key has expired, the vehicle can only continue to be locked and unlocked for a limited time and the number of engine starts is limited. Corresponding messages are shown on the Control Display.

Passing on digital keys

The vehicle owner can pass a digital key for his/her vehicle on to another person with a compatible smartphone via the BMW Connected app.

When a digital key is passed on, a TAN transaction number is generated. Using this TAN and the Digital Key Code, another person can register the digital key in the vehicle. This means the driver can let someone else use the vehicle without having to be in the vicinity of the vehicle themselves.

The TAN and the Digital Key Code should only be passed on in person or via telephone.

The Safe Share function may be available, depending on the software version of the BMW Connected app. If this function is activated prior to handover, the digital key is subject to certain limitations. For example, it is no longer possible to deactivate certain driving stability systems. The ConnectedDrive portal contains more detailed information.

The digital key that has been passed on can be removed at any time in the vehicle or via the BMW Connected app.

If a digital key has been removed via the BMW Connected app, it can only still be used to unlock and lock the vehicle for a limited time and the number of engine starts is limited. If the vehicle is then used with a different digital key or with a vehicle key, the removed digital key can no longer be used.

Corresponding messages are shown on the Control Display.

Registering digital keys in the vehicle

In order to pair a digital key, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle or an active digital key belonging to the vehicle owner in the smartphone dock.

If the digital key has been passed on by the vehicle owner, it may not be possible to meet this requirement. In this case, the Digital Key Code and

the TAN must be entered. The digital key that has been passed on can be used to unlock the vehicle even before it has been registered.

Place the smartphone with the digital key to be registered in the smartphone dock.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. "Activate Digital Key"
6. Enter the Digital Key Code and the TAN if applicable.

Once the digital key has been registered, its name appears in the list of digital keys.

Activating/deactivating digital keys in the vehicle

A digital key can be temporarily deactivated.

In order to activate and deactivate a digital key, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle or an active digital key belonging to the vehicle owner in the smartphone dock.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. Select the desired digital key.
6. "Digital Key active"

A deactivated digital key will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Removing digital keys in the vehicle

In order to remove a digital key, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle or another active digital key belonging to the vehicle owner in the smartphone dock. To remove all digital keys, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle.

The key card cannot be removed.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. Select a digital key if applicable.
6. > "Remove Digital Key"
 - The digital key is removed from the list of registered digital keys.
 - > "Remove all Digital Keys"

Resetting BMW Digital Key

To reset BMW Digital Key, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle.

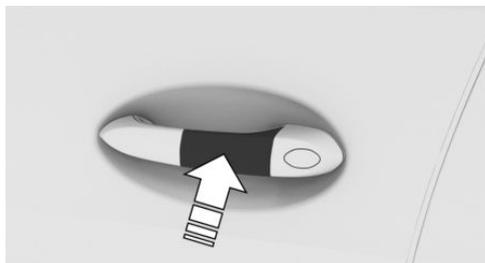
Following the reset, it will no longer be possible to lock, unlock or start the vehicle with a digital key.

The vehicle owner must provide the Service Partner with evidence of his/her authorisation for the vehicle in order to use BMW Digital Key again.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold the smartphone or key card up against the outer handle on the driver's door.

Starting the engine



1. Open the cover of the smartphone dock.
2. Place the smartphone or key card in the middle of the smartphone dock in front of the cupholders.
3. Once the digital key has been detected as an authorised key, the engine can be started.

Selling the smartphone/vehicle

If a smartphone with a digital key is sold, all digital keys should be deleted from the smartphone.

If a vehicle is sold, BMW Digital Key should be reset in the vehicle. The new vehicle owner should make sure that BMW Digital Key has been reset. This ensures that the previous owner no longer has access to the vehicle.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▶ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged. To replace the battery, see page 93.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▶ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may interfere with the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

If a fault occurs, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the vehicle key or with the integrated key, see page 94.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

Depending on the equipment and the country variant, it is possible to select whether the doors are also unlocked. To adjust the settings, see page 107.

The boot lid cannot open when the vehicle is in parking service mode, see page 105.

Safety notes

WARNING

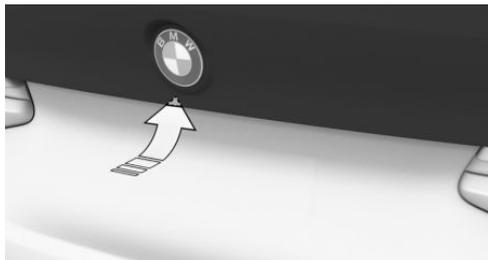
Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Without automatic operation of the tailgate: opening and closing

Opening from outside



- ▶ Without Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the vehicle key about your person, then press the button on the outer side of the boot lid.

- ▶  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.
If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.
Opening with the vehicle key, see page 92.

Closing

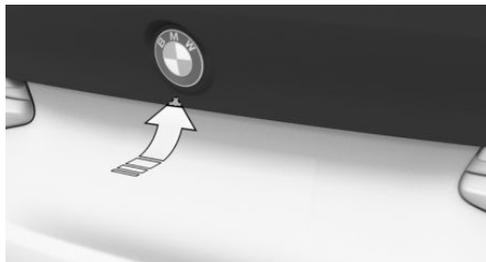


Pull the boot lid down using the handle recess.

With automatic operation of the tailgate: opening and closing

Opening

From outside



- ▶ Without Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the vehicle key about your person, then press the button on the outer side of the boot lid.
- ▶  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.
If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.
Opening with the vehicle key, see page 92.

From inside

- ▶  Press the button in the driver's door storage compartment.

Cancelling the opening operation

The opening procedure is interrupted:

- ▶ If the vehicle begins to move.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing again closes the boot lid.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing again closes the boot lid.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Pressing and holding the button closes the boot lid again.

- ▶ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Closing

From outside

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the vehicle key.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

- ▶  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

With Comfort Access:

- ▶  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

The vehicle is locked after the boot lid has been closed. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the boot lid.

From inside

- ▶  Pull and hold the button in the driver's door storage compartment.

For this function, the vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

Cancelling the closing operation

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▶ When driving off suddenly.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing again re-opens the boot lid.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing again re-opens the boot lid.
- ▶ By releasing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing the button again and holding it down resumes the closing operation.

- ▶ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling the button again and holding it in this position resumes the closing operation.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, operate the unlocked boot lid manually; do so slowly and without sudden movements.

Boot lid emergency release



Pull the handle in the boot.

This will unlock the boot lid.

Parking service mode

Principle

In parking service mode, the Control Display is disabled and operation via iDrive is no longer possible.

This mode can be used, for example, if the vehicle is to be handed over to a parking service.

General

In parking service mode, the vehicle settings cannot be changed via iDrive. Personal settings cannot be changed and personal data cannot be displayed.

In addition, the following actions are performed:

- ▶ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▶ DSC cannot be switched off.
- ▶ The boot lid can be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

Operating requirements

- ▷ At least one driver profile has been created.
- ▷ A driver profile or the guest profile is active.
- ▷ A ConnectedDrive account is assigned to at least one driver profile.

Calling up the menu for parking service mode

Via the switch-off screen

The switch-off screen is displayed after switching off the drive-ready state. Select the entry for parking service mode in the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the top of the Control Display

1. Tilt the Controller up
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating parking service mode

General

Before activating parking service mode, a PIN must be defined so that parking service mode can be deactivated later on.

The procedure for entering a PIN varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been defined for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

1. Select the desired setting:

"Lock tailgate as well"

The boot lid is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

2. "Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. PIN required.
3. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Lock tailgate as well"

The boot lid is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
 - ▷ "Activate linkage"

This PIN is defined for the active driver profile.
4. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The active driver profile is the guest profile.

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. PIN required.
3. Select the desired setting:

"Lock tailgate as well"

The boot lid is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
4. "Activate now"

This PIN can be used once to deactivate parking service mode when the guest profile is active.

Deactivating parking service mode

General

The lock screen for parking service mode is displayed on the Control Display.

How parking service mode is deactivated depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver has activated parking service mode, a driver can deactivate parking service mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select a driver profile.
2. Enter the PIN assigned to the driver profile.

If you have forgotten the PIN, parking service mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive login details.

Driver profile without PIN

Parking service mode was activated by a different person. To deactivate parking service mode, a driver without a PIN must enter the login details for his/her ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select a driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive login details assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

It is only possible to deactivate parking service mode in the guest profile if the mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select the guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was set during activation.

If you have forgotten the PIN, parking service mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Settings

General

Various settings are possible for opening and closing, depending on the equipment and the country specifications.

These settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
 - ▷ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate desired acknowledgement signals:
 - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.
 - ▷ With alarm system:

"Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is acknowledged by an acoustic signal sounding twice, locking by the acoustic signal sounding once.

Folding the mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"
The exterior mirrors are folded in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of journey"
After drive-ready state has been switched off by pressing the start/stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Lock automatically"
The vehicle is automatically locked again after a short while if no door is opened after unlocking.
 - ▷ "Lock after pulling away"
On driving off, the vehicle is locked automatically.

Boot lid

Boot lid and doors

Depending on the equipment and the country specifications, these settings may not be available.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"

4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Tailgate"
Boot lid is opened.
 - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"
Boot lid is opened and the doors are unlocked.

Comfort Access

Contactless locking and unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Unlock by approaching"
 - ▷ "Lock by leaving"

Headlight courtesy delay feature



You can assign the headlight courtesy delay feature to the vehicle key button.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. "Home lights"

Standing air conditioning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. "Auxiliary climate control"

Closing the Glass Roof automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Automatic roof closing"

If the vehicle was parked with the Glass Roof open, the Glass Roof will be automatically moved to the raised position when it starts to rain.

Establishing rest state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Rest state, see page 49, is established when the front doors are opened.

Alarm system

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes when the vehicle is locked:

- ▷ A door, the bonnet or the boot lid is being opened.
- ▷ Movements inside the vehicle.
- ▷ A change in the vehicle's incline, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ An interruption in the power supply from the battery.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for on-board diagnosis OBD.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- ▷ Audible alarm:
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Visual alarm:
By flashing the exterior lights.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched off and on at the same time as the vehicle is unlocked and locked with the vehicle key or Comfort Access.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered on opening a door if the door has been unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the boot lid with the alarm system switched on

The boot lid can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the boot lid, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights flash once.

Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds:
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:

The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because doors, bonnet or boot lid are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

If the open access points are then closed, the interior protection and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.

- ▷ The indicator lamp extinguishes after the vehicle has been unlocked:
No attempt has been made to tamper with the vehicle.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:
The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing away.

Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and Glass Roof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm without any unauthorised activity taking place.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In washing bays or car washes.
- ▷ In two-level garages.
- ▷ During transport via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- ▷ When there are pets in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked after starting to refuel.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior protection can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector



Within 10 seconds of locking the vehicle, press the button on the vehicle key.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Stopping the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and switch on drive-ready state using the special ID feature of the vehicle key, see page 93.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: fully grip the handle of the driver's or front passenger door while carrying the vehicle key.

Power window switches

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operated. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is kept clear.

Overview



Power window switches



For information on the safety switch

Operating requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.
- ▷ The vehicle key is in the vehicle interior.

Opening

- ▷  Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens for as long as the switch is held.

- ▷  Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window is opened automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort opening with the vehicle key, see page 90.

Closing

- ▷  Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes for as long as the switch is held.

- ▷  Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort closing with the vehicle key, see page 90.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 96.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted.

The window is opened slightly.

Safety note

WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories within the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1.  Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The window is closed but with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a

certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

2.  Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window is closed with no anti-trap function.

For information on the safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the safety function is switched on.

Electric glass roof

General

The glass roof and the sun guard are operated using the same switch.

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body may become trapped when the Glass Roof is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is kept clear.

Overview



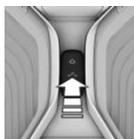
Open/close the glass roof/sun guard.

Operating requirements

The Glass Roof and the sun guard can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.
- ▷ The vehicle key is in the vehicle interior.

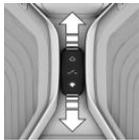
Raising/closing the Glass Roof



Push the switch briefly up.

- ▷ The closed glass roof is raised and the sun guard opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened Glass Roof closes to the raised position. The sun guard does not move.
- ▷ The raised Glass Roof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard separately



- ▶ Push the switch in the desired direction as far as the resistance point and hold it in this position.

The sun guard continues to open for as long as the switch is pressed. The glass roof is opened if the sun guard is already fully open.

The Glass Roof closes for as long as the switch is held. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed.

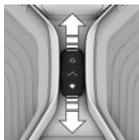
- ▶ Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The sun guard is opened automatically. The glass roof is opened automatically if the sun guard is already fully open.

The Glass Roof is closed automatically. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed automatically.

Pressing the switch up stops the movement.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard together



- ▶ Push the switch twice in rapid succession beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The glass roof and the sun blind move together. Pressing the switch up stops the movement.

Comfort opening and comfort closing with the vehicle key, see page 90.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 96.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass roof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass roof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass roof fully.

For closing when it is raining

Principle

In rest state, the open Glass Roof is automatically moved to the raised position under the following conditions:

- ▶ When it starts to rain.
- ▶ Six hours after locking.

Operating requirements

- ▶ It must be possible for rain to reach the touch control box in the area of the rear-view mirror. The touch control box may be obscured by a car port or bridge, for example.
- ▶ Vehicle must be in rest state.
- ▶ The function must be activated in the settings, see page 107.

Malfunctions

The open Glass Roof is not moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The Glass Roof is blocked.
- ▶ The anti-trap mechanism is not secured.
- ▶ There is a system error, for example due to a temporary interruption in the electrical power supply. In this case, initialising the Glass Roof can help.

An error message is shown on the Control Display. No further closing is attempted.

The open Glass Roof is immediately moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- ▶ Rain detection is not possible due to the system.

An error message is shown on the Control Display.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

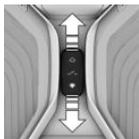
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the roof frame and Glass Roof while the Glass Roof is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while the Glass Roof is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position or it is stopped when closing from the raised position.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from an open position

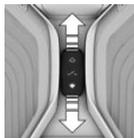
In the event of danger from outside, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.
The Glass Roof is closed with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.
3. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the Glass Roof closes with no anti-trap function. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from a raised position

In the event of danger, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

The Glass Roof is closed with no anti-trap function.

Initialising after a power failure

General

If a power failure occurs while the Glass Roof is opening or closing, it may only have limited functionality afterwards.

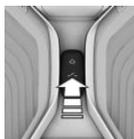
The system can be initialised under the following conditions.

- ▶ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▶ In drive-ready state.
- ▶ The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During initialisation, the Glass Roof closes with no antitrap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Initialising the system



Press the switch up and hold until initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds.

- ▶ If the Glass Roof is closed, it opens, then closes again.
- ▶ If the Glass Roof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialisation is complete once the Glass Roof and sun guard have opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safe seating position

A seating position that suitably reflects the requirements of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Comply with the notes in the following chapters:

- ▷ Seats, see page 116.
- ▷ Seat belts, see page 119.
- ▷ Head restraints, see page 122.
- ▷ Airbags, see page 194.

Seats

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.

⚠ WARNING

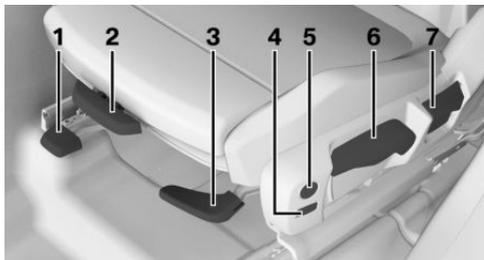
If the backrest is angled back too far, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a danger of injury or even death. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview



- 1 Forward/back
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Seat angle
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Height
- 7 Backrest angle

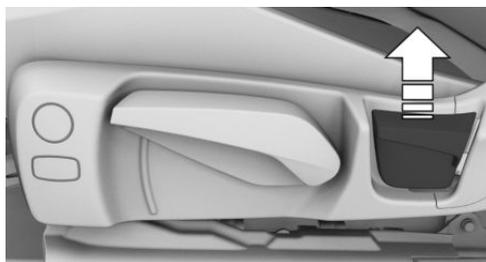
Forward/back



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

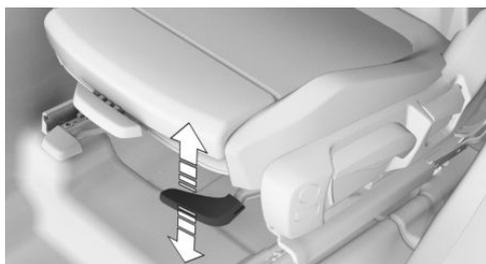
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Backrest angle



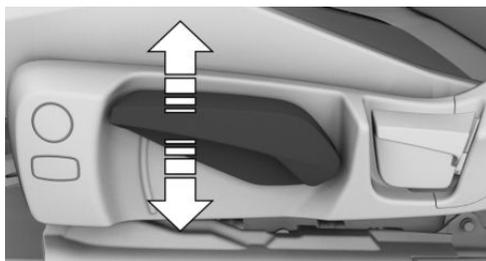
Pull the lever and apply your weight to or lift your weight off the backrest as required.

Seat angle



Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired angle.

Height



Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired height.

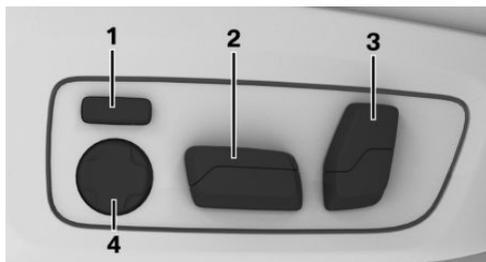
Electrically adjustable seats

General

The driver's seat setting is saved for the current profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

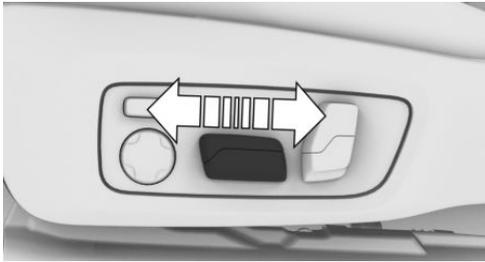
The current seat position can be saved using the memory function.

Overview



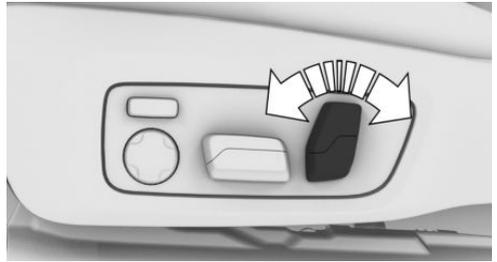
- 1 Backrest width
- 2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
- 3 Backrest angle
- 4 Lumbar support

Forward/back



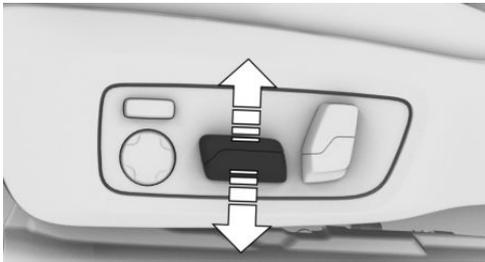
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Backrest angle



Tilt the switch forwards or backwards.

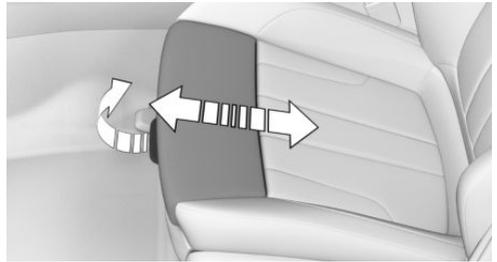
Height



Press the switch up or down.

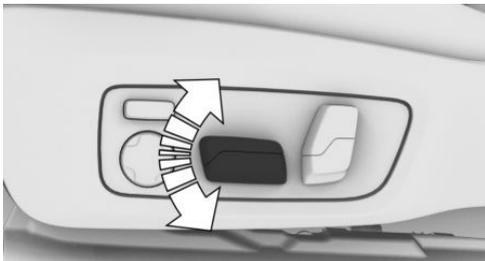
Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed in such a way that the lumbar region, the lordosis, is supported. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.

Adjusting



▶ Press the button at the front/rear:

The curvature is increased/decreased.

- ▶ Press the button at the top/bottom:
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Function restriction

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Principle

To adjust the backrest width can improve lateral support when taking corners.

General

To change the width of the backrest, the side cushions of the backrest can be adjusted.

Adjusting



- ▶ Press the button at the front:
Backrest width is reduced.
- ▶ Press the button at the rear:
Backrest width is increased.

Function restriction

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Seat belts

Number of seat belts and belt buckles

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only provide effective protection when worn correctly.

The two outer belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General

Before each journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature if the seat is adjusted correctly.

Safety notes

WARNING

If a seat belt is used by more than one person at the same time, the protective effect of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a danger of injury or even death. Only one person should use each seat belt at any one time. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in a child restraint system intended for this purpose.

WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the body's skeleton and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or lie against pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Do not route the lap section of the belt across the abdomen.

In order to provide the protection for which they have been designed, the seat belts should be adjusted to fit as snugly as possible without being uncomfortable. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Do not allow the seat belt webbing to come into contact with polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. It may be safely cleaned with a mild soap water solution. Replace the seat belt if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with seat belt straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; carrying infants and children on the occupant's lap is not permitted.

It is essential to replace the entire belt assembly if it was being worn by a vehicle occupant when a severe impact occurred, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. There is a danger of injury or even death. Lock the wider rear seat backrest when using the middle seat belt.

WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely in the following situations:

- ▷ If the seat belts or belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- ▷ If the belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points and ensure that they are kept clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Correct seat belt use

- ▷ Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- ▷ Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hips in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- ▷ The seat belt must not be rubbed on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.
- ▷ Avoid wearing bulky clothing.
- ▷ Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper section.

Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- ▷ Pull the seat belt tongue diagonally across the body and push it into the belt buckle until it audibly engages into place.
- ▷ It is important to adjust the belt length correctly. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the belt tongue has engaged correctly in the buckle, pull upwards on the shoulder section of the belt until the lap belt fits tightly.

- The diagonal shoulder strap adjusts automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle.

Fastening the seat belt

1. When fastening the seat belt, guide it slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.



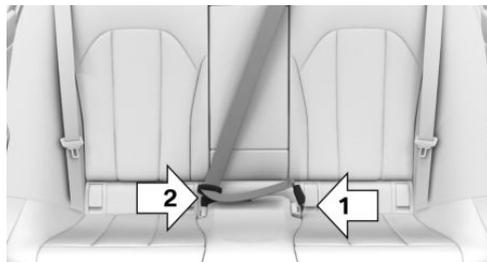
If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

Middle seat belt in the rear

Fastening the seat belt

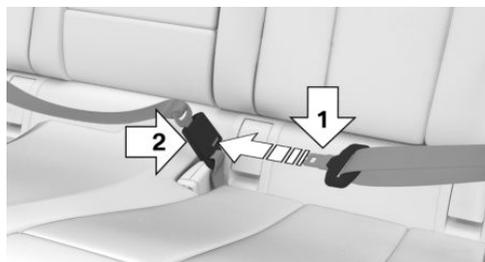


1. Pull the seat belt tongue at the end of the belt out of the bracket on the parcel shelf.
2. Insert the lower seat belt tongue in the belt lock, arrow 1.
3. Insert upper seat belt tongue in belt lock, arrow 2.

Belt locks must engage audibly.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Use the seat belt tongue, arrow 1, to open the second belt buckle, arrow 2.



4. Guide the seat belt to the bracket on the parcel shelf.

Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat

General

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

On some country variants, the seat belt reminder is also active if the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and heavy objects are on the front passenger seat.

Display in the instrument cluster



A Check Control message is shown. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General

The seat belt reminder is automatically activated every time the engine starts.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

In some national-market versions, the seat belt reminder is also active if the seat belt is not fastened and heavy objects are on the rear seats.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

Symbol	Description
	Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.



Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.



Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety function

In critical driving situations, for example full braking, the front seat belts are tensioned automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident, the belt tension is slackened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button in the belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

Front head restraints

Safety notes

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

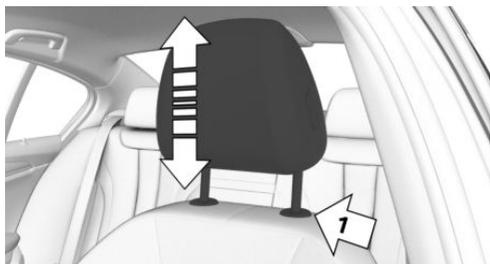
WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.

- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Adjusting the height



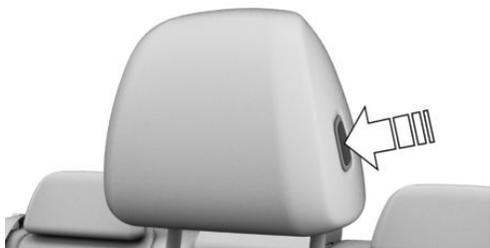
- ▷ Downwards: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push head restraint upwards.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: M sport seat

The head restraints can be adjusted in height.

Setting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

After adjusting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

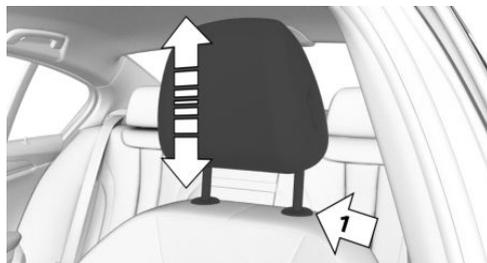
Setting the distance: M sport seat

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.



1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Removing: M sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

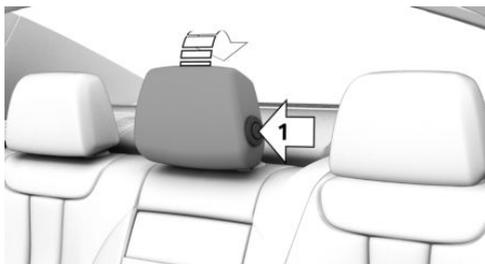
⚠ WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Folding down the head restraints

Head restraints can be folded back to improve rear visibility. Only fold back the head restraint if no one is sitting on the seat in question.



- ▷ Backward: press the button, arrow 1, and fold back the head restraint.
- ▷ Forwards: fold the head restraint forwards as far as it will go. Ensure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



The outer head restraints can be adjusted in height.

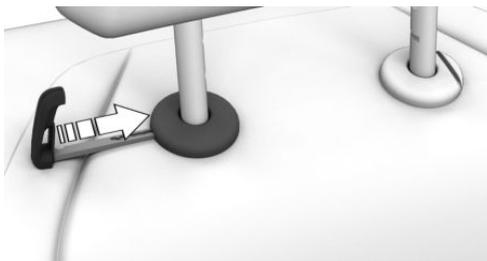
- ▷ Downwards: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push head restraint upwards.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

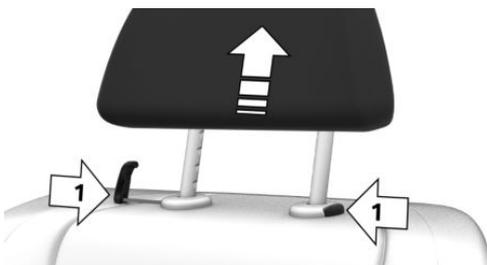
Removing the outer head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the corresponding rear backrest, see page 312.
2. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
3. Insert the integrated key, see page 94.



4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button simultaneously, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

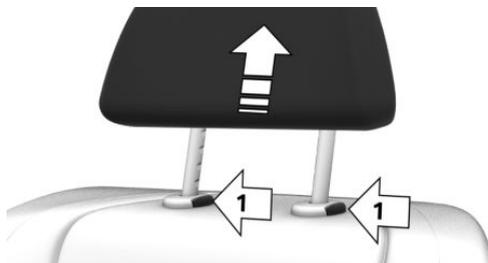


Removing the middle head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one is sitting on the middle seat.

1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.

2. Press the buttons, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.



Installing

To install, insert the head restraint into the mount and push down until resistance is felt.

After installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirror

General

The mirror setting is saved for the current driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

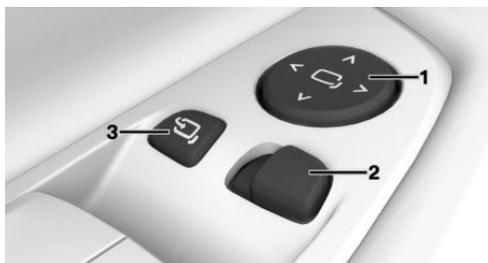
The current exterior mirror position can be saved with the memory function.

Safety note

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. There is a risk of accident. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.

Overview



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function
- 3 Folding in and out

Electrical adjustment



- Press the button.
- The selected mirror moves in response to the button movement.

Selecting a mirror



- To switch to the other mirror:
- Push the switch.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, press the edges of the mirror glass to adjust the mirror.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Because of its width, the vehicle could sustain damage in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.



- Press the button.

Folding in is possible up to a speed of approx. 20 km/h, 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is useful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.

Folded-in mirrors automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approx. 40 km/h, 25 mph.

Automatic heating

If required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatically dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror, see page 127, control this function.

Automatic parking function, exterior mirror

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downwards. This improves the view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

Activating

1.  Push the switch to the driver's mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the front passenger's mirror position.

Rear-view mirror, manual-dim



To reduce glare tilt the lever on the rear-view mirror forward.

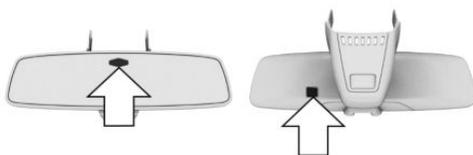
Rear-view mirror, automatic dim

General

The rear-view mirror is dimmed automatically. The function is controlled by photocells:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Operating requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and the windscreen.

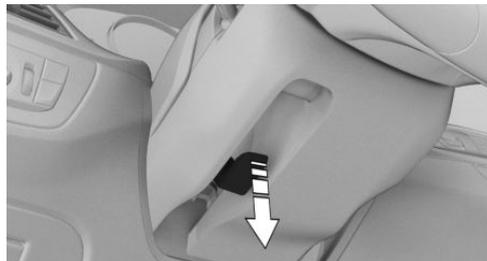
Steering wheel

Safety note

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever downwards.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview



Button for steering wheel heating

Switching on/off



Press the button.

A Check Control message is shown.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes following a temporary stop, the steering wheel heating is activated automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last journey.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-Up Display.

General

For each driver profile, two memory slots can be assigned with different settings.

The following settings are not saved:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety notes

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only call up the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.

WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

Overview



The memory buttons are on the driver's door.

Saving

1. Set the desired position.
2.  Press the button. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The saved position is called up.

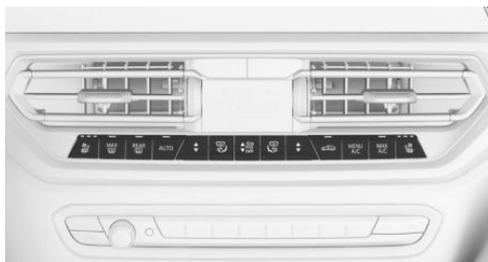
The operation is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or press one of the memory buttons again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Seat heating

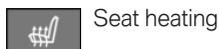
Overview

Front



Seat heating

Rear



Seat heating

Switching on



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The highest level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

If a driving mode for optimising consumption is activated, see page 325, the heating output is reduced if necessary.

If you stop the vehicle temporarily and then resume your journey within approximately 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically re-activated at the last setting.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the LEDs are extinguished.

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Important considerations

Safety note

 **WARNING**

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Children always in the rear seats

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 12 years old or under 150 cm, 5 ft tall are only allowed to be transported in the rear using child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children aged 12 years and older must be secured with a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system is no longer appropriate due to their age, weight or stature.

Safety note

 **WARNING**

Children under 150 cm, 5 ft tall cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or even death. Children under 150 cm, 5 ft tall must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are deactivated. Front passenger airbags can only be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 196. If the front passenger airbags cannot be deactivated, do not carry children on the front passenger seat, even in suitable child restraint systems.

Safety note

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Fitting child restraints

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety notes

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be limited or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example in the event of an accident, braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or even death.

Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been subjected to stresses in an accident must not be used further.

If attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger seat that cannot be deactivated:



It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Before fitting a child restraint on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are disabled. If the airbag cannot be deactivated, do not fit child restraint systems.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags with key switch, see page 196.

Rearward-facing child restraints

⚠ DANGER

If triggered, active front passenger airbags can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.



Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it, as death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Seat position and height

Before installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust to a mid-height position. This seat position and height achieves the best

possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieved.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

ISOFIX child seat mountings

General

Note for Australia: ISOFIX child seats are not permitted for road use in Australia at the time of printing. However, also since a change of the respective regulations is also expected in the future, lower ISOFIX anchorages are supplied in line with applicable ADRs also for Australia.

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Only certain ISOFIX child restraints may be used in the seats intended for this purpose. The corresponding size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

For information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question and if the child restraint systems are suitable for or comply with ISOFIX, see: Suitable seats for child restraint systems, see page 135.

Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

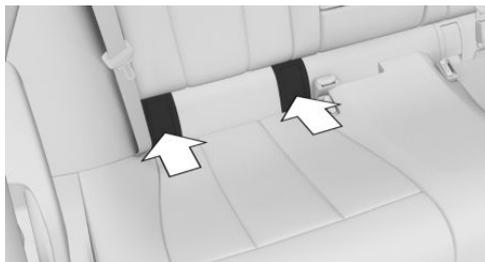
Safety note

WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the ISOFIX child restraint systems may be limited. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged correctly and the ISOFIX child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
  ISOFIX 	The corresponding symbol shows the brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors.



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.

Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Fitting ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Install the child restraint system, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors are locked correctly in place.

i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a regulation for child restraint systems, which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

Symbol	Meaning
	If this symbol is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has been approved in accordance with i-Size. The symbol shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors.
  TOP TETHER	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Mounts for the upper ISOFIX retaining strap

Safety notes

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

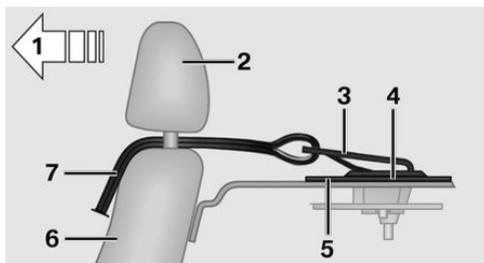
⚠ WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

⚠ NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. There is a risk of material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper mounting points.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Mounting points

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the mounts or along both sides of the head restraint to the mounting point.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Lower and lock the head restraint in place as necessary.



Depending on the equipment version, there are two or three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems

Overview

General

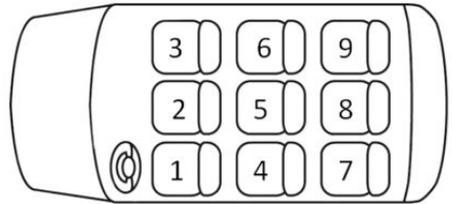
The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Seats and child restraint systems

The section below provides information on which child restraint system is suitable for which seat in the vehicle.

Left-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Fastening				
1						
3 a)	ON					
	OFF					
4, 6 - b)						
e)						

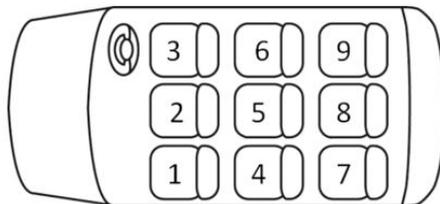
Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Fastening
------	-------------------------	-----------

5 - c, d)



- a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.
- b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.
- c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.
- d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.
- e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Right-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Fastening
------	-------------------------	-----------

1 a) ON

OFF

3

4, 6 - b)

e)

Seat	Airbag, front pas- senger	Fastening
------	---------------------------------	-----------

5 - c, d)



- a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.
- b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.
- c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.
- d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.
- e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
--------	---------	--------	---------



Not suitable for child restraint systems.



Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.



Suitable for child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.



Suitable for ISOFIX and i-Size child restraint systems.



Suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.



Suitable for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Left-hand drive vehicles: Which child restraint systems can be used on the seats

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accord-

ance with the ECE-R 16 and ECE-R 129 standard.

Seat position	1	3	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No

Seat position	1	3	4	5	6
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	B3	No	B3

Not compatible with i-Size seat position with a support stand: cannot be used.

Seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but without Top Tether: cannot be used.

Seat belt buckles for adults are located on the side between the two lower ISOFIX anchors: cannot be used.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	2nd seat row left
5	2nd seat row centre

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
6	2nd seat row right
7	3rd seat row left
8	3rd seat row centre
9	3rd seat row right

Right-hand drive vehicles: which child restraint systems can be used on which seats

Seat position	1	3	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	F3	No	F3

Seat position	1	3	4	5	6
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	B3	No	B3

Not compatible with i-Size seat position with a support stand: cannot be used.

Seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but without Top Tether: cannot be used.

Seat belt buckles for adults are located on the side between the two lower ISOFIX anchors: cannot be used.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left	6	2nd seat row right
2	Front centre	7	3rd seat row left
3	Front right	8	3rd seat row centre
4	2nd seat row left	9	3rd seat row right
5	2nd seat row centre		

Suitable seats for child restraint systems with a belt

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, air-bag ON	Front passenger seat, air-bag OFF-a)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle – b, c)
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	X	U, L	U, L	U
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	X	U, L	U, L	U



Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, air-bag ON	Front passenger seat, air-bag OFF-a)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle – b, c)
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years and over	X	U, L	U, L	U

U: suitable for child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

L: suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

X: not suitable for child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

b) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

c) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Suitable seats for ISOFIX child restraint systems

The following ISOFIX child restraints may be used on the seats designated as appropriate for this purpose. The corresponding size class and

size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category	Front passenger seat, air-bag ON	Front passenger seat, air-bag OFF – b)	Rear seats, outer – a)	Rear seat, middle
Carycot			F - ISO/L1	X	X	IL	X
			G - ISO/L2	X	X	IL	X
0	Up to 10 kg	Approximately 9 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Approximately 18 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
			D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X



Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF - b)	Rear seats, outer - a)	Rear seat, middle
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to approximately 4 years	D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
			B - ISO/F2	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			B1 - ISO/F2X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			A - ISO/F3	X	X	IL, IUF	X

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back and height position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

b) Only if equipped with ISOFIX child seat mountings.

IL: suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the vehicle type list of the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

IUF: suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight class.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

Suitable seats for i-Size child restraint systems

Information on the suitability of the different vehicle seats for the installation of child restraint systems suitable for i-Size or meeting i-Size requirements - in accordance with standard ECE-R 129:

Group	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer 2nd seat row	Rear seat, middle 2nd seat row
i-Size	X	X	i-U	X

i-U, suitable for rearward and forward-facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X: not suitable for i-Size child restraint systems.

Recommended child seats

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- ▷ Maxi Cosi CabrioFix.
- ▷ Maxi Cosi FamilyFix base.
- ▷ Römer Duo Plus.

▷ Römer KidFix XP.

For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

General

In accordance with ADR 34/02, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint at each rear seating position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.

Safety notes

! WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using and removing child restraints, fold away the anchor brackets if necessary.

! WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

! WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

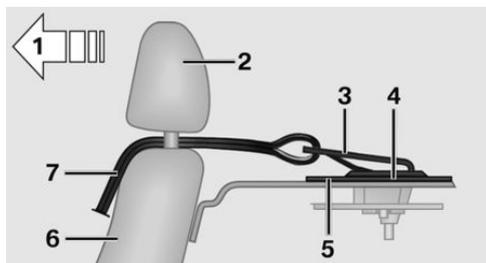
Mounting points

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.
	




Depending on the features installed in the vehicle, there are two outer mounting points or three other mounting points for child restraints with tether straps.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
2. Push the head restraint up or remove it.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts.
On the middle seat, guide the strap over the head restraint as needed.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Push the head restraint down if necessary and engage it in place.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors



Unlock or lock the safety switches on the rear doors with the integrated key.

Symbol	Function
	Child locks are unlocked.
	Child locks are locked.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for the rear

 Press the button on the driver's door.

Various functions are disabled and cannot be operated in the rear. For information on the safety switch, see page 112.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW eDRIVE

Principle

This BMW is a hybrid vehicle. As well as the internal combustion engine, the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage hybrid system consisting of an electric motor and a high-voltage battery, among other components.

The hybrid system can move the vehicle under electric power alone, or support the internal combustion engine in certain situations.

General

When driving under electric power, the vehicle does not consume any fuel. For example, this allows particularly environmentally friendly driving in inner-city areas, without generating emissions.

During driving with the combustion engine, the hybrid system helps to lower fuel consumption. The electric motor is switched on to support this, if required by the situation.

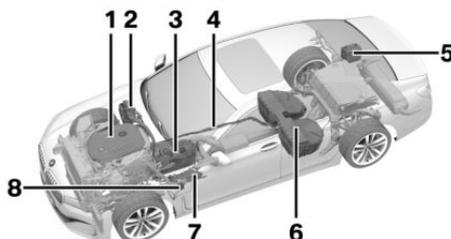
In addition, the electric motor acts as a generator: the electric motor converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy when braking and when rolling in overrun mode. The electrical

energy is saved in the high-voltage battery and is used to drive the electric motor.

The high-voltage battery can be charged using the charge point at charging stations or at domestic socket outlets.

Overview

Hybrid system components



- 1 Internal combustion engine
- 2 Power electronics
- 3 Electric motor
- 4 High-voltage cables: orange
- 5 Auxiliary battery for internal combustion engine
- 6 High-voltage battery
- 7 Charge control unit
- 8 Charge point

Hybrid system settings

General

The hybrid system properties can be set to the following hybrid modes using Driving Experience Control, see page 148:

- ▷ SPORT
- ▷ HYBRID
- ▷ ELECTRIC

- ▷ ADAPTIVE
- ▷ BATTERY CONTROL

For system reasons, different maximum speeds apply to the individual settings. The speed range that is possible in each case is indicated by a blue mark on the speedometer.

HYBRID, ADAPTIVE and SPORT

The vehicle is propelled in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor.

ELECTRIC

In ELECTRIC, the vehicle is driven exclusively electrically.

BATTERY CONTROL

With BATTERY CONTROL, the electric range can be retained and conserved for a later point in the journey or increased if necessary.

Display of the hybrid system

The displays of the hybrid system, see page 167, provide information about the current state of the hybrid drive and depict the usage of the system in a diagram.

Functions when driving

General

The internal combustion engine provides the main driving power. At the same time, the high-voltage battery is charged as needed. The hybrid system starts the internal combustion engine automatically.

While driving electrically with ePOWER, the vehicle is powered by the electric motor.

Depending on the charge state of the high-voltage battery, the maximum speed, acceleration capability and range achieved may vary.

For electric driving and driving with the internal combustion engine, the relevant requirements, see page 145, must be met.

Driving off and accelerating are energy intensive. To optimise acceleration and reduce the fuel consumption, the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine, see page 146.

Safety note

WARNING

With electric driving, pedestrians and other road-users might not detect the vehicle as well as usual due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

Electric driving

- ▷ Charge state and temperature of high-voltage battery is adequate.
- ▷ Selector lever position D or R engaged.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal is not pressed far enough.
- ▷ Possible maximum speed for electric driving is not exceeded.

Automatic starting of the internal combustion engine while the vehicle is being driven

The internal combustion engine is started automatically while the vehicle is being driven under conditions such as the following:

- ▷ With high acceleration or on upward gradients.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle position, kick-down.
- ▷ Charge level of the high-voltage battery is too low.
- ▷ Selector lever position M/S is engaged.
- ▷ During manual gear-shifting using the shift paddles.



- ▷ Adaptation to the road with active route guidance.
- ▷ Request to the hybrid components depending on system.

Automatic stopping of the internal combustion engine while the vehicle is being driven

When the speed is reduced, the internal combustion engine is stopped if the requirements for electric driving are met.

Auto Start Stop function, coasting

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function, see page 148, shuts down the internal combustion engine when driving as well as braking and rolling off, and when stationary. The condition of rolling with the internal combustion engine switched off is also called coasting. Comfort functions such as automatic air conditioning are still supplied by the high-voltage battery and may remain switched on.

After coasting, the internal combustion engine or electric motor provides the necessary drive power automatically again, depending on the hybrid mode.

Operating requirements

Coasting is possible under the following preconditions:

- ▷ Charge state of high-voltage battery is adequate.
- ▷ Transmission position D engaged.
- ▷ Drive system is at operating temperature.
- ▷ Not in SPORT driving mode: when coasting, without operating the brake, at speeds below 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Energy recuperation: CHARGE

Principle

The electric motor acts as a generator and converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy during braking and coasting.

The high-voltage battery is charged by this energy recuperation. If needed, this saved electrical energy is supplied back to the electric motor.

General

Depending on the set hybrid mode, the high-voltage battery is recharged at different rates, and the vehicle is decelerated at different rates when coasting.

Operating requirements

Recovering kinetic energy depends on the following factors, for example:

- ▷ Vehicle is in motion.
- ▷ Selector lever is in position D or M/S.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is not completely charged.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Displays of energy recuperation in the instrument cluster, see page 167.

Support by electric motor

Principle

The internal combustion engine provides the main driving power.

In so doing, the electric motor also supports with additional drive power if needed.

eASSIST

In normal drive operation, the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine depending on the situation.

eBOOST

With increased acceleration – when overtaking, for example – the maximum available power of the electric motor is called on. To do this, press the accelerator pedal heavily.

Charging vehicle

The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged, see page 332, using the charge point at charging stations or at domestic socket outlets.

Regular and complete charging of the high-voltage battery reduces fuel consumption, because electrical energy is used.

Air conditioning when parking and charging

The hybrid system allows the automatic air conditioning to be operated before the start of a journey and with the internal combustion engine switched off.

When the vehicle is being recharged or if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, the interior can be cooled in advance before the start of a journey, see page 299.

The standing air conditioning, see page 298, can also be switched on directly.

Energy-saving driving

The following descriptions are to be followed for energy-saving driving:

- ▶ Saving fuel, see page 323.
- ▶ Using the hybrid system efficiently, see page 324.
- ▶ Driving modes for optimising consumption, see page 325.
- ▶ Adaptive hybrid mode, see page 170.

Safety of the hybrid system

Comply with the safety information, see page 19.

Audible pedestrian protection

Depending on the country variant, the system generates a continuous driving noise when stationary in drive-ready state and during electric driving up to approximately 30 km/h, 20 mph.

A loudspeaker system plays the noise outside the vehicle.

As a result, other road users, for example pedestrians or cyclists, can detect the vehicle better.

Laying up the vehicle

Follow information on vehicle abandonment and longer stationary phases, see page 401.

Start/stop button

Principle



Drive-ready state, see page 49, is switched on and off by pressing the start/stop button.

Steptronic transmission: drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the start/stop button while the brake pedal is depressed.

Pressing the start/stop button again switches drive-ready state off again and standby state, see page 49, is switched on.

The drive-ready state cannot be switched on when the charging cable is connected, see page 333.

Driving off

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply the drive position.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Drive off.

After starting the vehicle or the combustion engine, full drive power may only be available after approx. 30 seconds. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way. Full drive power



can be used as soon as eBoost is available, see page 146.

Auto Start Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system therefore shuts down the internal combustion engine, if the preconditions for electric driving are met. The standby state remains switched on.

General

READY is shown in the instrument cluster. If needed, the internal combustion engine starts automatically.

The internal combustion engine is also stopped during the journey when rolling off or braking. As long as the vehicle is rolling off and energy recuperation is not active, this drive state is known as coasting.

The internal combustion engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ The internal combustion engine is not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Gear selector lever in M/S position.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is heavily discharged or vehicle electric system is highly loaded.
- ▷ High stress of the automatic air conditioning system in the heating up and cooling down phase.
- ▷ Bonnet is unlocked.
- ▷ Vehicle is optimised for the current style of driving, for example during running in or after a visit to the workshop.
- ▷ Hybrid system is faulty.

Safety function

An automatically stopped internal combustion engine does not start automatically:

- ▷ When the driver's door is open, when neither the brake nor the accelerator pedal is pressed and the driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- ▷ With the bonnet released.

The indicator lamps illuminate. The internal combustion engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

1. Press the start/stop button.
 - ▷ The standby state is activated.
 - ▷ The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
 - ▷ Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Malfunction

If there is a malfunction, Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the internal combustion engine automatically. A message is displayed. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked.

Driving Experience Control

Principle

Driving Experience Control influences the driving dynamics and hybrid system characteristics of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adapted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General

The following systems are influenced, for example:

- ▷ Engine characteristics.

- ▷ Properties of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission.
- ▷ Adaptive M suspension.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise Control.

Overview



Displays in the instrument cluster



The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument cluster.

Drive modes

Button	Drive mode
	SPORT STANDARD XTRABOOST SPORT INDIVIDUAL
	HYBRID STANDARD HYBRID ECO PRO
	ELECTRIC STANDARD ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE
	BATTERY CONTROL

Some driving modes can be configured individually.

Drive modes in detail

SPORT STANDARD

Principle

Dynamic configuration for greater agility with an optimised suspension.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "SPORT"
3. "STANDARD"

XTRABOOST

Principle

If available, the electric motor provides additional power. Dynamic configuration for maximum agility with an adapted drive.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "SPORT"
3. "XtraBoost"

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Principle

Individual settings can be made in SPORT INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

Configuring

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"



4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"

5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to default setting:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

HYBRID STANDARD

Principle

HYBRID STANDARD is activated every time the vehicle is started via the start/stop button.

In HYBRID STANDARD, the vehicle is propelled according to the various driving situations in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor. The most efficient type of propulsion is preferred in each case.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "HYBRID"
3. "STANDARD"

HYBRID ECO PRO

Principle

In HYBRID ECO PRO, the vehicle is propelled according to the various driving situations in hybrid mode. HYBRID ECO PRO supports a fuel-efficient driving style by adapting the engine control and comfort functions; for example, climate control output.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "HYBRID"
3. "ECO PRO"

ELECTRIC STANDARD

Principle

The vehicle is exclusively electrically driven.

If necessary, the maximum electric speed that applies to ELECTRIC STANDARD may be deliberately exceeded with the aid of kick-down, see page 160. The internal combustion engine is automatically started and changes to the most recently selected hybrid mode. Automatic starting of the internal combustion engine while the vehicle is being driven, see page 145.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "ELECTRIC"
3. "STANDARD"

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

Principle

The vehicle is exclusively electrically driven.

In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, individual settings can be made for comfort functions; for example, climate control output. This supports a fuel-efficient driving style.

Switching on

1.  Press the button.
2. "ELECTRIC"
3. "INDIVIDUAL"

Configuring

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL can be specified as the default mode, for example.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile. Reset ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL to the default settings:

"Reset".

BATTERY CONTROL

General

A certain charge state of the high-voltage battery can be maintained or increased with BATTERY CONTROL. This charge state can be set. The electric range can be conserved in this way for a later point in the journey, for example.

If the current charge state is too low, the battery is charged during the journey. This charging process increases average consumption.

Switching on



Press the button.

Setting the charge state

The charge state can be set in various ways.

Using the button:

1.  Press the button. BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
2. Select "Set target value" on the Control Display.
3. "Value": set the required value.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "BATTERY CONTROL"
5. Set the desired value.

The Control Display shows the charge state that is to be saved as a percentage.

The instrument cluster shows a mark for the set value in the charge state display of the high-voltage battery, see page 167.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General

The individual configuration of the drive mode is saved for the currently used driver profile. The configuration set last is directly activated when the drive mode is called up again.

Activating the configuration of the drive mode

Press the button of the desired drive several times.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

**WARNING**

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Engaging**When the vehicle is stationary**

Pull the switch.

The LED is illuminated.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red. The parking brake is engaged.

While the vehicle is in motion**General**

Use during the journey serves as an emergency brake.

Pull and hold the switch. Vehicle brakes strongly for as long as the switch is pulled.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

Apply the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

With emergency stop assistant

Briefly press the switch for the parking brake to activate the emergency stop function, see page 230.

Releasing**Releasing manually**

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Steptronic transmission: press the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged.
LED and indicator lamp turn off.
The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is automatically released on driving off.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

Automatic Hold**Principle**

Steptronic transmission:

This system provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

On upward gradients, it prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General

The parking brake is automatically applied in the following conditions:

- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ When the driver's door is opened with the vehicle at a standstill.
- ▷ If the vehicle is brought to a standstill with the parking brake during a journey.

Display



The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

NOTE

Automatic Hold applies the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary and prevents the vehicle from rolling in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold before driving into the car wash.

Overview



 Automatic Hold

Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.



2.  Press the button.

The LED is illuminated.

The indicator lamp illuminates green.

AUTO H Automatic Hold is ready to operate.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last selected setting is retained.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Functional readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

When the brake is pressed, for example when stopped at traffic lights, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away.

The indicator lamp illuminates green.



Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator lamp extinguishes.

Automatic activation of the parking brake

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

The indicator lamp changes from green to red.



The parking brake is not applied automatically if drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was still rolling. Automatic Hold is switched off in this case.

Switching off operational readiness

 Press the button.

The LED is extinguished.

The indicator lamp extinguishes.

AUTO H

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being kept stationary by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake pedal when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

A Check Control message is shown.

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After a power failure

To restore parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.



2.  Pull the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged and then press it.

The procedure can take a few seconds. Any sounds that occur are normal.



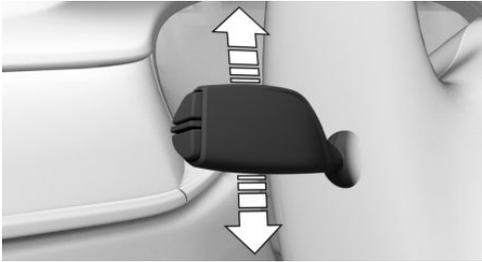
The indicator lamp no longer illuminates as soon as the parking brake is once again operational.

Turn indicator

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

Triple turn signal

Briefly press the lever up or down.

The duration of the triple turn signal can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

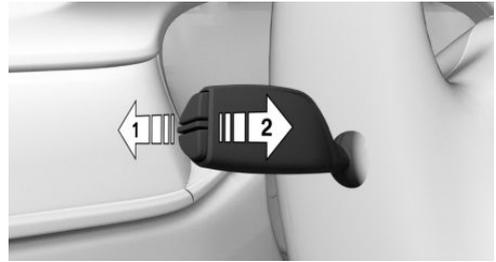
The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Push the lever forwards or pull it back.



- ▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General

Do not use the wipers on a dry windscreen, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

Safety notes

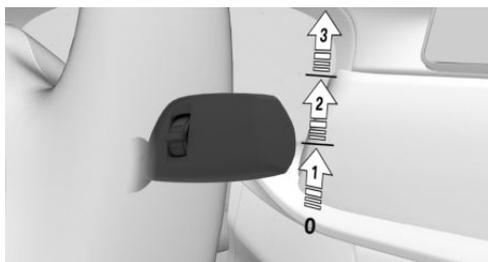
WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Switching on



Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▶ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor, position 1.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed, position 2.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is resumed, the wipers continue operating at the previously set level.

Switching off and flick-wiping



Press the lever down.

- ▶ To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- ▶ To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

The lever returns to the home position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the level of rainfall.

General

The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror.

Safety note

NOTE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating



Press the lever upwards once from the home position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

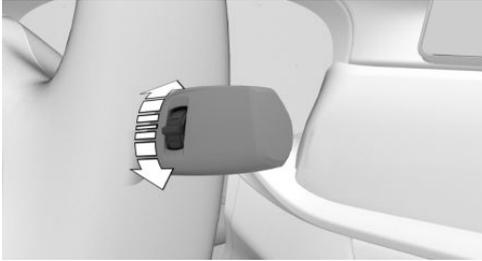
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If there is frost, wiping may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back to the home position.

Setting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windscreen washer

Safety notes

WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use antifreeze if required.

NOTE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.

Cleaning the windscreen



Pull the lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen directly in front of the wiper blade as the wipers move up.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded away from the windscreen.

General

This is necessary for example when replacing the wiper blades or to keep them away from the windscreen when there is frost.

Safety notes

WARNING

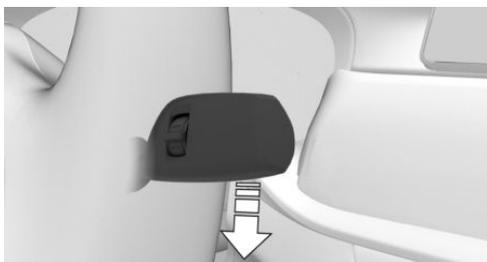
If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the wiper lever down and hold until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Lift the wipers completely away from the windscreen.



Folding in the wipers

After folding in the wipers, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Folding in the wipers completely onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

3. The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the opportunity of changing gear manually if required.

Safety note

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away, for example by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

D drive position

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

R Reverse

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

N neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without power from the engine, for example in car washes.

P Park

General

Selector lever position for parking the vehicle, for example. In selector lever position P, the transmission blocks the drive wheels.

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in the following situations, for example:

- After switching off drive-ready state if selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After switching off standby state if selector lever position N is engaged.
- If, while the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is not depressed.

Engaging selector lever positions

General

Apply the brakes until you are ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position is selected.

Operating requirements

The selector lever will only move from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed.

It may not be possible to move out of selector lever position P until all technical requirements are fulfilled.

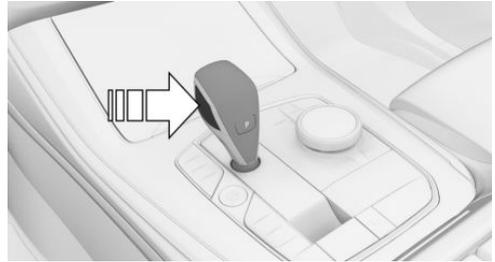
Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following incorrect operation:

- Inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R.
- Inadvertent change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.

2. Press and hold the button to cancel the selector lever lock.



3. Briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point. The selector lever returns to the middle position when released.



Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle may need to be rolled a short distance without power, for example in a car wash, or may need to be pushed.



Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold, see page 152.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.
Standby state then remains switched on and a Check Control message is shown.
The vehicle can now roll.



NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically if necessary, see page 162.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.

Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; some resistance will be felt.

Sport programme M/S

Principle

In the sport programme, the gear shift points and gear shift times are configured for more sporty driving. For example, the transmission shifts up later and the gearshift times are shorter.

Activating the sport programme



Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The sport programme of the gearbox is activated.

Electric driving eDRIVE and the Auto Start Stop function are deactivated. Rolling away and brake phases are used more frequently for energy recuperation. The high-voltage battery is charged at a different rate depending on the driving situation. Fuel consumption can increase.

Exiting sport programme

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

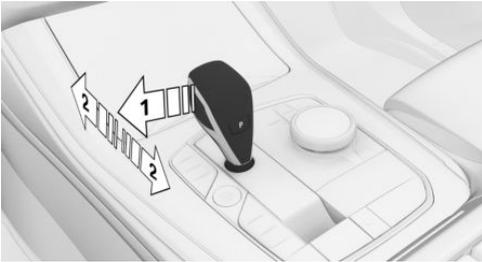
Manual operation M/S

Principle

The gears can be changed manually in manual operation.

Activating manual operation

1. Press the selector lever from selector lever position D to the left, arrow 1.



2. Press the selector lever forwards or pull it backwards, arrows 2.

Manual operation becomes active and the gear is shifted.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example M1.

Shifting gears

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

In certain situations, the transmission continues to shift automatically, for example when engine speed limits are reached.

Steptronic sport transmission: preventing automatic upshift in manual operation M/S

When SPORT drive mode, see page 149, is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically shift up in manual operation M/S when certain engine speed limits are reached.

In addition, there is no down shift for kick-down.

Exiting manual operation

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Principle

Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gear-shifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out at the appropriate engine RPM and vehicle speed.

Short-term manual operation

In selector lever position D, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch to manual operation temporarily.

The gearbox reverts to automatic operation from manual operation after a certain period of time of moderate driving without acceleration or gear shifts using the shift paddles.

Changing to automatic operation is possible as follows:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- ▷ In addition to briefly pulling right shift paddle, briefly pull left shift paddle.

Permanent manual operation

In selector lever position S, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch permanently to manual operation (mode).

Steptronic sport transmission

In the corresponding gearbox version, operating the kick-down and the left shift paddle at the same time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear. This is not possible in short-term manual operation.

Shifting gears



- ▷ Change up: pull right shift paddle briefly.
- ▷ Change down: pull left shift paddle briefly.
- ▷ Pull and hold left shift paddle to shift to the lowest possible gear.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Unlocking the transmission lockout electronically

General

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically to manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger.

Before releasing the transmission lockout, apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
2. Press the start/stop button. Press and hold the start/stop button.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, push the selector

lever to selector lever position N and hold it there, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is shown.



4. Release the start/stop button and selector lever.
5. Release the brake.
6. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger and then secure it against rolling away.

More information can be found in the Tow-starting and towing chapter, see page 394.

Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Use of Launch Control causes premature component wear, as the function subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

Do not use Launch Control when running in, see page 318.

When starting with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

Operating requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, 6 miles.

Starting with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the button.
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
5. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.
A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed is adjusted. Release the brake within 3 seconds.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the transmission requires approximately 5 minutes to cool down before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To assist driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control, DSC as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Instrument cluster

Principle

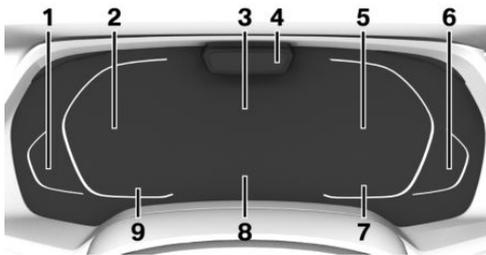
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When the Driving Experience Control is used to change programmes, the displays in the instrument cluster are adapted to the driving mode in question.

General

Changes to the displays in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Handbook.

Overview



- 1** Fuel gauge [174](#)
Total range [174](#)
- 2** Speedometer
- 3** Central display area [165](#)
Service requirements [175](#)
Navigation display
Charge screen [167](#)
- 4** Depending on the vehicle equipment: Driver Attention Camera
- 5** Selection lists [179](#)
Widgets in the instrument cluster [165](#)
Trip distance recorder, see Journey data [180](#)
Performance display [168](#)
Status of Driving Experience Control [148](#)
Gear indicator [158](#)
- 6** Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery [167](#)
Electric range [167](#)
- 7** Outside temperature [174](#)
- 8** Check Control [170](#)
- 9** Speed Limit Assist [254](#)
Speed Limit Info [177](#)
Time [73](#)

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and setting, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Navigation displays such as the map view or, if route guidance is active, a route preview with route guidance information.
- ▷ Displays showing service requirements.
- ▷ Charge screen.
- ▷ Assisted Driving View. Information about the Driver Assistance Systems appears in an animated vehicle environment.

The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Settings

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets in the instrument cluster

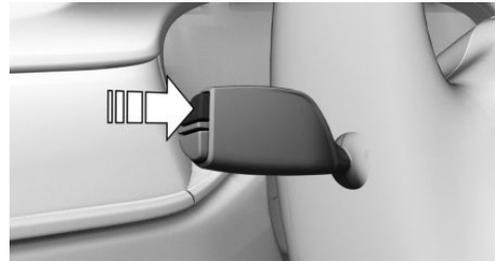
Principle

Displays for particular functions can be shown in the revolution counter in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- ▷ Current entertainment source, for example radio.
- ▷ Torque and power.
- ▷ Journey data.
- ▷ Efficiency display.

Selecting



Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the desired widget is selected.

Display





Efficiency display

Principle

Information on the driving style and consumption can be shown as a widget in the instrument cluster, taking the form of a consumption display, for example.

General

Various information is displayed, depending on the activated driving mode:

Drive mode	Display
HYBRID	<p>Average consumption, fuel.</p> <p>Momentary consumption, fuel.</p> <p>Consumption display, fuel.</p> <p>Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.</p>
ELECTRIC	<p>Average consumption, electrical.</p> <p>Momentary consumption, electrical.</p> <p>Consumption display, electric.</p> <p>Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.</p>
SPORT	<p>Engine temperature.</p>

Average consumption

Average consumption indicates the fuel consumption over a specific route.

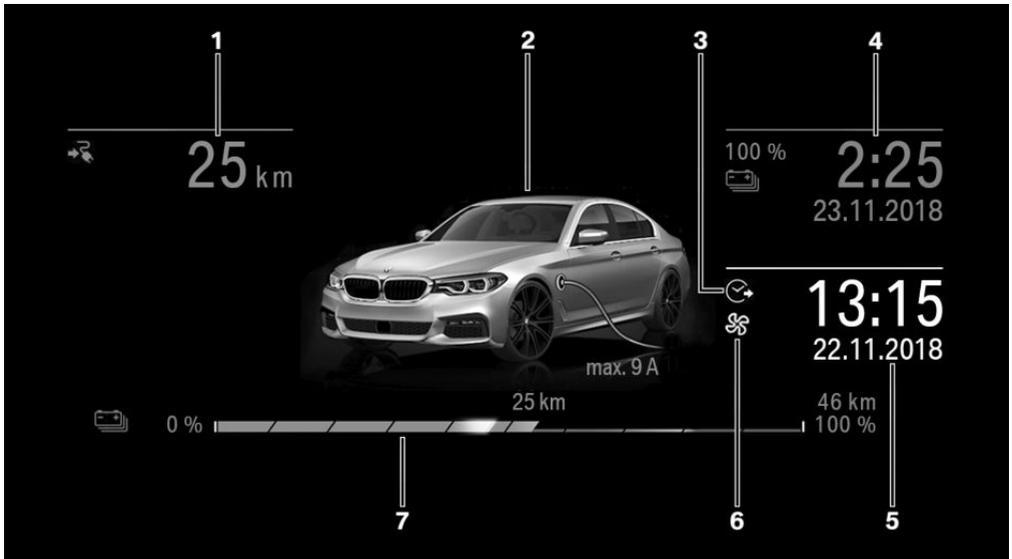
In ELECTRIC, the average electric consumption is displayed.

Current consumption

The current consumption indicates how much fuel is currently being used. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

In ELECTRIC, the current electric consumption is displayed.

Charge screen



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Range for electric driving 339 | 5 Departure time for timer 339 |
| 2 Charge state with charging cable 339 | 6 Standing air conditioning 339 |
| 3 Departure time timer 339 | 7 Current charge state 339 |
| 4 Time for end of charging 339 | |

Display of the hybrid system

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

The following functions of the hybrid system are shown:

- ▷ Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery.
- ▷ Drive-ready state: READY.
- ▷ Electric driving: ePOWER.
- ▷ Energy recuperation: CHARGE.
- ▷ Acceleration support: eBOOST.

- ▷ Electric driving: ELECTRIC.
- ▷ Electric driving: ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL
- ▷ Hybrid mode: HYBRID STANDARD.
- ▷ Hybrid mode: HYBRID ECO PRO.
- ▷ BATTERY CONTROL.

What is displayed depends on the operating mode of the system.

Charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery

Principle

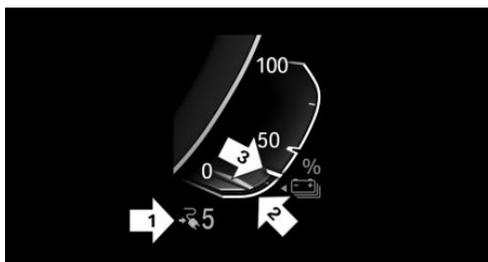
Displays the current charge state of the high-voltage battery in percent.

Safety note

WARNING

Even when the display shows that the high-voltage battery is discharged, the high-voltage system will still be carrying high-voltage. There is a danger of injury or fire. Do not touch or modify live parts, for example orange high-voltage cables, even if the batteries are empty.

Display



- ▶ Electric range, arrow 1.
- ▶ Current charge state, arrow 2.
- ▶ Set charge state of the BATTERY CONTROL function, arrow 3.

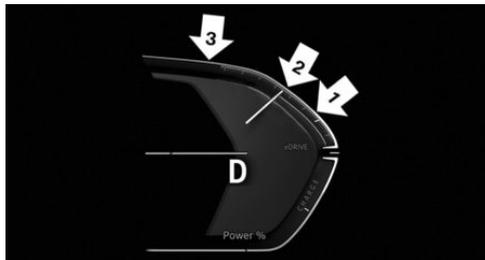
Drive-ready state: **READY**

READY

READY shows the drive-ready state. For further information see drive-ready state, see page 50.

Performance display

Electric driving: **ePOWER**



The range for ePOWER electric driving is shown in blue, arrow 1. The area coloured in blue may vary depending on the driving situation and hybrid mode.

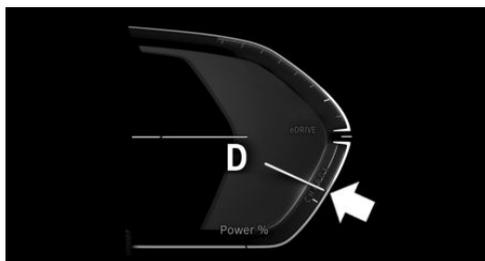
A scale shows the power output by the hybrid drive as a pointer, arrow 2.

If the pointer is outside the range coloured in blue, the internal combustion engine is switched on, arrow 3.

In SPORT drive mode, the internal combustion engine speed is shown instead of the power of the hybrid drive.

For more information, see BMW eDRIVE, see page 144.

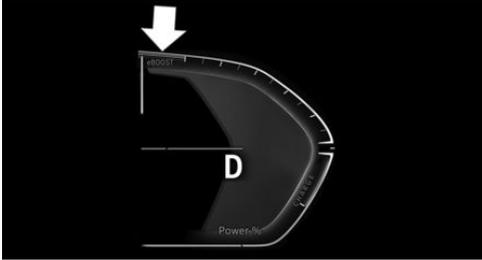
Energy recuperation: **CHARGE**



The energy recuperation when coasting and braking is displayed depending on the drive mode by the CHARGE display in the instrument cluster, see arrow. The high-voltage battery is charged. No energy can be recovered if high-voltage battery is fully charged.

For more information, see BMW eDRIVE, see page 144.

Acceleration support: eBOOST



If the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine, for example in the case of heavy acceleration, eBOOST will be displayed. The level of eBOOST provided depends on the available charge state of the high-voltage battery. eBOOST might not be available at all if the charge state of the low-voltage battery is low.

For more information, see BMW eDRIVE, see page 144.

Electric driving: ELECTRIC

ELECTRIC

The display becomes active after ELECTRIC is activated via Driving Experience Control, see page 148.

Electric driving: ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

The display becomes active after ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL is activated via Driving Experience Control, see page 148.

Hybrid mode: HYBRID STANDARD

HYBRID

The display becomes active after HYBRID STANDARD is activated via Driving Experience Control, see page 148.

Hybrid mode: HYBRID ECO PRO

HYBRID ECO PRO

The display becomes active after HYBRID ECO PRO is activated via Driving Experience Control, see page 148.

BATTERY CONTROL

BATTERY CONTROL

The display becomes active after BATTERY CONTROL, see page 149, is activated via the BATTERY CONTROL button.

The available electric range is saved for later.

Display on the Control Display

Current vehicle status

General

The following are shown:

- ▷ Active components of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Direction of energy flows:
 - Orange: energy flow of the internal combustion engine.
 - Blue: energy flow of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Vehicle states:
 - ▷ ePOWER.
 - ▷ POWER.
 - ▷ eBOOST.
 - ▷ CHARGE.
 - ▷ Coasting.
 - ▷ Charging.

- ▷ System requirements of the hybrid system, for example drive system is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ Driver request, for example, gear selector lever in M/S position.

Displaying current vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Adaptive hybrid mode

Principle

The system makes it possible to distribute the available electrical energy as effectively as possible so that electric driving can take place in urban areas and in the destination when the navigation system route guidance is active. If the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, additional route sections for electric driving are selected. Downward gradients, for example, are taken into account for efficient energy recuperation purposes.

The internal combustion engine is automatically activated or deactivated depending on the route section, which supports an efficient driving style and emission-free driving in urban areas.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D engaged.
- ▷ Route guidance active.
- ▷ HYBRID STANDARD, HYBRID ECO PRO, HYBRID COMFORT or ADAPTIVE activated, depending on equipment.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Check Control

Principle

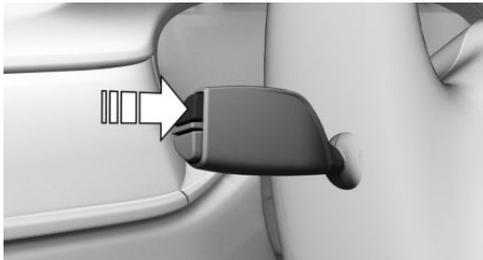
The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

General

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

Where required, an acoustic signal is also output and a text message shown on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If a number of malfunctions have occurred at the same time, the messages are displayed in succession.

The messages can be hidden for approximately 8 seconds. Afterwards they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. The

Check Control messages remain saved and can be displayed again.

Displaying saved Check Control messages

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select a text message.

Display

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain what a Check Control message means and what the indicator and warning lamps signify.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, can be called up via Check Control.

If the message is urgent, the supplementary text is shown in the Control Display automatically.

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select the required text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator and warning lamps

Principle

Indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when there is a malfunction in monitored systems.

General

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When drive-ready state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder



The driver's side seat belt is not fastened. On some country variants: the front passenger seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats



Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.



Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake



The parking brake is engaged.

Release the parking brake, see page 152.

Brake system



Brake system malfunctioning. Continue driving at moderate speed.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Brake System ABS



Braking force boost may be faulty. Avoid sudden braking. Bear in mind that the braking distance will be longer.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces. The vehicle is being stabilised.

Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. DSC, see page 237.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated, or Dynamic Traction Control DTC activated



DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

DSC, see page 237, and DTC, see page 239.

Runflat indicator RPA



The runflat indicator reports a loss of tyre inflation pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

Runflat indicator, see page 361.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM



The indicator lamp illuminates: the Tyre Pressure Monitor is reporting a low tyre inflation pressure or a flat tyre. Note the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously: no flat tyres or loss of tyre inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▶ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▶ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted: have it checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if necessary.
- ▶ Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page [355](#).

Steering system



The steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Engine warning light



Engine function malfunctioning.

Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Socket for on-board diagnosis, see page [381](#).

Rear fog light



Rear fog light is switched on.

Rear fog light, see page [191](#).

Audible pedestrian protection inactive



Audible pedestrian protection deactivated or may be defective.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Green lights

Seat belt reminder for rear seats



Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is fastened.

Turn indicator



The turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator bulb flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn indicator has failed.

Turn indicators, see page [154](#).

Side lights



The side lights are switched on.

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page [186](#).

Low-beam headlights



Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page [186](#).

Lane Departure Warning



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on. At least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued on at least one side of the vehicle.

Lane Departure Warning, see page [213](#).

Front fog lights



Front fog lights are switched on.

Front fog lights, see page [191](#).

High-beam assistance



High-beam assistance is switched on.

The high-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically according to traffic conditions.

High-beam assistance, see page [189](#).

Automatic Hold



Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

Automatic Hold, see page [152](#).

Blue lights

High-beam headlights



The high-beam headlights are switched on.

High-beam headlights, see page 155.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The angle of the vehicle may cause the display to fluctuate.

For notes on refuelling, see page 342.

Display



An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current total range is displayed as a number.

Revolution counter

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

The revolution counter is available in SPORT driving mode or in the M/S sport program.

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Safety note

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded sections of road. There is a risk of accident. At low temperatures, adjust the driving style to the weather conditions.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can still be covered with the content of the fuel tank as well as energy in the high-voltage battery.

General

The range can be displayed as the range for electric driving or as the total range. The total range takes account of the content of the fuel tank as well as the electrical energy in the high-voltage battery. If the preconditions for electric driving are not met, the total range only considers the content in the fuel tank.

Various factors, for example automatic air conditioning settings, are taken into account when calculating the electric range. The electric range value is adapted dynamically.

The following factors are taken into account when calculating the range:

- ▷ Settings of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Driving style.
- ▷ Climate conditions.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining total range is low. If a dynamic driving style is adopted, for example fast cornering, engine function at all times cannot be ensured.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, 30 miles the Check Control message is displayed continuously.

As soon as a low tank fill level has been reached, ELECTRIC is activated automatically to protect the internal combustion engine, if the requirements for electric driving are met. The sport programme of the Steptronic is not available.

It is possible to continue driving with reduced drive power and exclusively using the electric motor.

Safety note

NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

Electric motor range display

The electric range is permanently displayed under the charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery.



--- km

The display indicates that the high-voltage battery is almost fully discharged or the electric drive is not available at the present time.

Total range display



 229 km

The total range is permanently displayed next to the fuel gauge, see page 174.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the current service requirements and related maintenance jobs.

General

The distance or time remaining until the next service is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster after drive-ready state is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the vehicle key by a service advisor.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the maintenance work required can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"

Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.

4. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
---------	-------------

OK

No servicing is currently needed.



Maintenance or a statutory inspection is due soon.



Servicing is overdue.



Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for statutory vehicle inspections. Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"
4. "BMW Service"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Service history

Principle

Maintenance that has been performed can be displayed on the Control Display. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been documented in the vehicle data.

General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is documented in the vehicle data.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"
Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4.  "Service history"
5. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
OK	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out later than scheduled.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Shift point indicator

Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the shift point indicator is active in M manual operation of the Steptronic transmission and with the manual gearbox.

Steptronic transmission: displays

Information on up or down shifting are displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without shift point indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Example	Description
	Most efficient gear is engaged.
	Shift to a more efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info with overtaking restriction display

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently applicable speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display, as well as additional signs where necessary; for example, in wet conditions.

General

The camera located near the interior rear-view mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Road signs with additional instructions, for example restrictions applicable in wet weather, are taken into account and correlated with information in the vehicle, such as the windscreen wiper signal. The road sign and associated additional signs are then displayed in the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display, if applicable, or ignored, depending on the situation. Some additional signs are taken into account for speed limit evaluation, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

The system takes the information saved in the navigation system into account and also displays the speed limits for sections of road with no road signs.

Overtaking restriction display

Principle

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs that are detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding symbols in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display.

General

The system considers overtaking restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of signs.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In countries in which no overtaking is primarily shown by road markings.
- ▷ On routes without signs.
- ▷ In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate an overtaking restriction but which are not signposted to this effect.

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed to indicate the end of the overtaking restriction display.

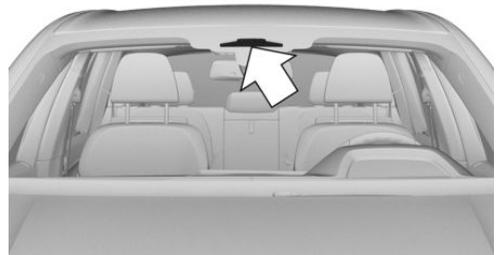
Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Info on speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

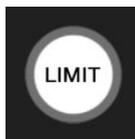
General

Depending on the national equipment, additional signs and overtaking restrictions are displayed together with Speed Limit Info.

Speed Limit Info



Present speed limit.



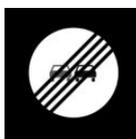
Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info may not be available.

The display flashes if the detected speed limit has been exceeded.

Overtaking restriction display



No overtaking.



End of overtaking restriction.

Additional signs

Symbols	Description
	Speed limit with time limit.
	Speed limit only applies in wet conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in snowy conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in foggy conditions.
	Speed limit applies to exit on left.
	Speed limit applies to exit on right.

Speed Limit Info with preview

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed to indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead. Depending on the equipment, temporary speed limits may also be displayed;

for example, speed limits at roadworks or traffic management systems.

Temporary speed limits can only be displayed if the following services are selected in the data protection menu, see page 77, for the navigation system:

- ▷ "Learning map"
- ▷ "Map update"

Settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Warning when speeding": activate or deactivate the flashing of the Speed Limit Info display in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display when the currently applicable speed limit is exceeded. The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assist settings.
 - ▷ "Show speeding": the speed limit detected by the Speed Limit Info is indicated by a mark in the speedometer in the instrument cluster.

System limits

In some situations, functionality may be limited or incorrect information may be displayed, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ If signs are fully or partially obscured by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections.

- ▷ If the area of windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ As a result of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system or road data are incorrect.
- ▷ In the case of speed limits that depend on the time of day or day of the week.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are navigation discrepancies, for example due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ In the case of electronic road signs.
- ▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
- ▷ In the case of country-specific signs or road layouts.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

Selection lists

Principle

The instrument cluster or the Head-Up Display can show lists for certain functions and can be used for operation where applicable.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Recent calls list.

If applicable, the relevant menu is opened on the Control Display.

Display



Depending on the equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	To change the entertainment source. Press the button again to close the list currently displayed.
	Display the last calls list.
	Turn the knurled wheel to select the desired setting. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the setting. The list that is currently selected can be displayed in the instrument cluster again by turning the knurled wheel.

Journey data

Principle

Values relating to the journey, such as the average consumption or the trip distance, are displayed.

General

The journey data can be shown on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset according to different intervals; for example, after refuelling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▶ Set interval for resetting the journey data.
- ▶ Average consumption, fuel.
- ▶ Average speed.
- ▶ Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.
- ▶ Average consumption, electrical.
- ▶ Consumption history as a diagram.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"

Consumption history

The consumption history shows the hybrid system usage in the form of a diagram as a function of the route covered.

Display in the instrument cluster

Information about the stretch of road can be displayed as a widget in the revolution counter. Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster, see page 165.

The following information is displayed:

- ▶ Total distance driven
- ▶ Set interval for resetting the journey data.
- ▶ Route covered, depending on the set interval.
- ▶ Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.

Resetting journey data

The intervals at which the values are reset can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

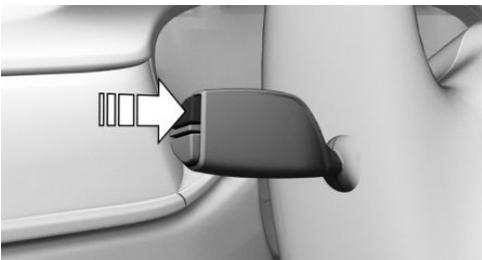
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Start of journey ()": the values are reset automatically if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.
 - ▷ "Refuel ()": the values are reset automatically after refuelling with a significant amount of fuel.
 - ▷ "Charging ()": the values are automatically reset after charging.
 - ▷ "Ex works": the values since leaving the factory are displayed.
 - ▷ "Individual ()": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ()".

Via the button on the turn indicator lever:

1. Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the widget for the journey data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn indicator lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ()".

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays primarily assist a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Charging pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.
- ▷ Acceleration force.
- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The sport displays can be shown as two widgets in the instrument cluster, see page 165.

The following widgets can be selected:

- ▷ Widget for torque and performance.
- ▷ Widget for acceleration force.

Vehicle status

General

It is possible to show the status of some systems and perform actions on them.

Calling up the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Overview of information shown

Symbols	Description
	"Flat Tyre Monitor": status of the runflat indicator, see page 361.
	"Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 355.
	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, see page 374.
	"Check Control messages": to display saved Check Control messages, see page 171.
	"Service requirements": to display service requirements, see page 175.
	"Teleservice Call": Teleservice Call.

Head-Up Display

Principle

The system projects important information, for example the speed, into the driver's field of vision.

The driver can register this information without having to divert attention from the road.

General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the Head-Up Display.

Overview



Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.

- ▶ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Driver Assistance Systems.
- ▶ Sport displays.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-Up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be adjusted with the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"

4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

The height of the Head-Up Display can also be saved with the memory function.

Adjusting the rotation

The Head-Up Display view can be rotated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Speed Assistant": call up settings for speed assistance.
 - ▶ "Display infotainment lists in": set whether the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or in the Head-Up Display.
 - ▶ "Sport displays": show revolution counter and shift lights in the Head-Up Display.
 - ▶ "Off": the sport displays are not shown in the Head-Up Display.



- ▷ "In SPORT mode": the sport displays are only shown in the SPORT driving mode.
- ▷ "Always": the sport displays are permanently shown in the Head-Up Display.
- ▷ "Reduced height": if some of the information is not in the driver's field of view, the information can be displayed in the lower part of the Head-Up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays on the Head-Up Display can be affected by the following:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects placed on the Head-Up Display cover.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Adverse lighting conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen is an integral part of the system.

The shape of the windscreen enables a sharp image to be projected.

A film in the windscreen prevents the projection of double images.

Therefore if the special windscreen needs to be replaced, it is strongly recommended that this be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Light and lighting

Switch in the vehicle



The light switch panel is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.

Symbol	Function
	Side lights.
	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient light conditions, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is low against a blue sky.

If the low-beam headlights are switched on manually, the automatic driving lights control is deactivated.

Activating

 Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for using your own judgement to assess the light conditions.

The sensors are unable, for example, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually.

Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

General

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically.

Side lights

General

The side lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Switching on

 Press the button on the light switch element.

 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

Do not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, since the vehicle battery could discharge and it may no longer be possible to switch on drive-ready state.

Switching off

 Press the button on the light switch element or switch on the drive-ready state.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the automatic driving lights control is activated.

Low-beam headlights

Switching on

 Press the button on the light switch element.

The low-beam headlights illuminate if drive-ready state is switched on.

 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

To switch on the low-beam headlights as soon as the standby state is switched on, press the button again.

Switching off

Depending on the country specifications, the low-beam headlights may be switched off in the low speed range.

 Press the button on the light switch element.

Parking lights

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

Button	Function
	Parking lights, right on.
	Parking lights, left on.

Switch off parking lights:

OFF

Press the button on the light switch element or switch on the drive-ready state.

Welcome lights

General

Depending on the equipment version, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

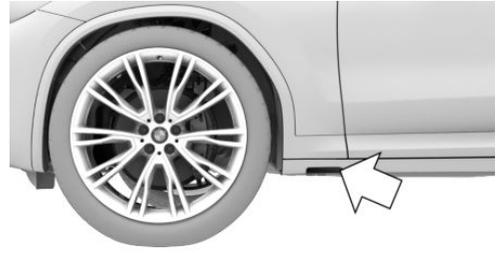
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

When the vehicle is unlocked, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
 - ▷ "Door handle lights"

The door handles and the ground in front of the doors are illuminated for a limited time.
 - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

The area adjacent to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General

If the high-beam headlights are activated with standby state switched on, the low-beam headlights remain on for a of time.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Home lights"
5. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General

The daytime driving lights illuminate if drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime driving lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Dynamic ECO light function

General

The brightness of the low-beam headlights is reduced, depending on the speed and distance from the vehicle in front.

Activating

 Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

Activate HYBRID ECO PRO, see page 150, or ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, see page 150, driving mode.

Adaptive light functions

Principle

Adaptive light functions makes it possible to illuminate the road responsively.

General

The adaptive light functions consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Headlights.
- ▷ Variable light distribution.

- ▷ Cornering light.
- ▷ Roundabout light.

Activating

 Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive light functions are active when drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Headlights

General

The headlight beams follow the road ahead in response to the steering angle and other parameters.

To prevent dazzling oncoming vehicles, the Adaptive Headlights do not swivel to the opposite side of the road when stationary.

If the headlights are converted, see page 191, the Adaptive Headlights may only function to a limited extent.

Anticipatory headlights for bends

The beams are adapted to the direction of the road ahead even before entering or leaving a bend.

Headlights for S-bends

The beams are kept as straight as possible when driving around S-bends.

Headlights for hairpin bends

The cornering light is also switched on before entering hairpin bends.

Variable light distribution

Principle

Variable light distribution illuminates the road even more effectively.

General

The light distribution is automatically adapted to the speed.

If equipment includes a navigation system, the light distribution is automatically adapted depending on the navigation data and speed.

City light

The light beam from the low-beam headlights is extended at the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The range of the low-beam headlights is increased.

Cornering light

In sharp turns up to a specified speed, for example in hairpin bends or when turning off, a cornering light is added to illuminate the inside area of the bend.

The cornering light is activated automatically depending on the steering angle or use of the turn indicators, where applicable.

When reversing, the cornering light may be activated automatically irrespective of the steering angle.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched on. The edge of the road is better illuminated. Shortly before leaving a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched off again.

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment compensates for acceleration and braking manoeuvres and vehicle load conditions to prevent oncoming vehicles from being dazzled. Illumination of the road is optimised.

High-beam assistance

Principle

High-beam assistance detects other road users in good time and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation.

General

High-beam assistance ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The highbeam headlights are not switched on by the system at low speeds.

The system responds to the lights from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

If no-dazzle high-beam assistance is installed, the high-beam headlights are not switched off for oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead of you; instead, the areas of the beam that would otherwise dazzle the oncoming traffic or traffic driving ahead are masked off. In this case, the blue indicator lamp continues to illuminate.

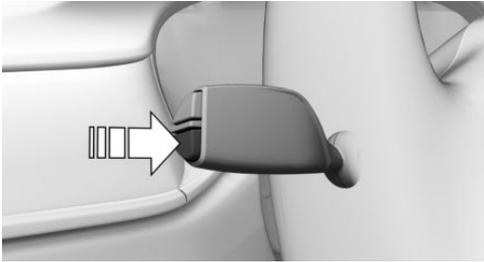
If the headlights are converted, see page 191, high-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

Activating

1. Press the  button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

2. Press the button on the turn indicator lever.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam and high-beam headlights.



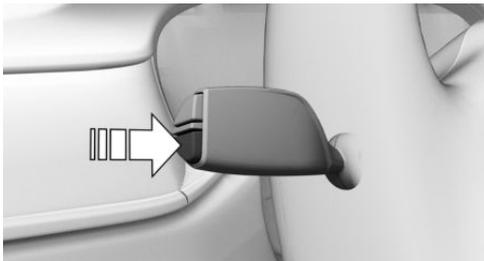
The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

If a journey is interrupted with high-beam assistance activated: when the journey is resumed, high-beam assistance remains activated.

The high-beam assistant is deactivated by switching the high beams on and off manually.

To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

High-beam assistance cannot replace the driver's own judgement as to when to use the high-beam headlights. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- ▶ In extremely adverse weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▶ When detecting poorly lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horse riders or carriages and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.
- ▶ On narrow bends, on steep hilltops or in depressions, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- ▶ In poorly lit towns or where there are highly reflective signs.
- ▶ If the area of windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Laser high-beam headlights

Principle

The beam throw of the high-beam headlights is increased for even better illumination of the road surface.

General

When high-beam headlights are switched on, laser high-beam headlight is switched on automatically in addition to LED high-beam headlight from a speed of approximately 60 km/h, 37 mph.

Depending on the country variant, additional information can be found on the laser information notice on the headlights.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Principle

The fog lights work alongside the low-beam headlights to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Operating requirements

Before the fog lights are switched on, the side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.



The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the fog lights are switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights illuminate automatically when the front fog lights are switched on.

Rear fog light

Operating requirements

Before the rear fog light is switched on, the low-beam headlights or the fog lights must be switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.



The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights switch on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Guiding fog lights

Principle

The light distribution of the low-beam headlights may be adapted to the foggy conditions according to the speed.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Automatic driving lights control is active.
- ▷ Rear fog lights or front fog lights are switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, you will need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

Converting the headlights

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Right/left-hand traffic"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

High-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

The availability of the adaptive light functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirements

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting



The brightness can be adjusted using the knurled wheel.

Interior light

General

Depending on the equipment, the interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Interior light



Reading lights

Switching the interior light on/off



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior light in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the roof lining in the rear.

Switching the reading lights on/off



Press the button.

Depending on the equipment version, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior light.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be set.

Switching on/off

The ambient lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient light"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the colour scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Colour"
5. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or open doors, are indicated by light effects.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dynamic light"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed during the journey

The lighting in the interior is dimmed for certain lights during journeys in the dark.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

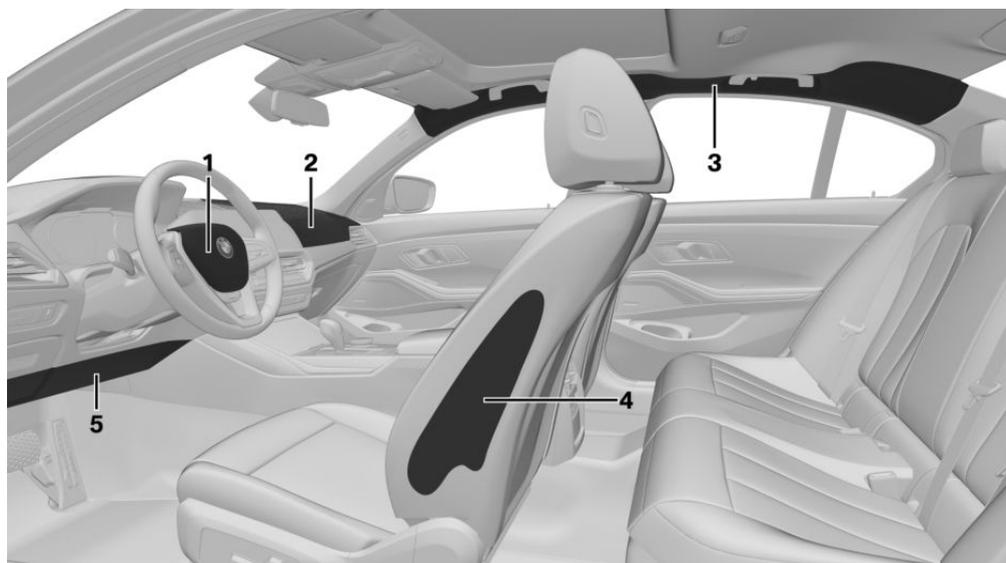
Safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Airbags



- 1 Front airbag, driver
- 2 Front airbag, front passenger
- 3 Head airbag
- 4 Side airbag
- 5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag protects the head in the event of a side-on crash.

Knee airbag

Depending on the equipment version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a head-on crash.

Protective effect

General

Airbags are not activated in every collision, for example, in minor accidents.

Information for optimum airbag effectiveness

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbag is restricted, the airbag system cannot provide the intended level of protection or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. There is a danger of injury or even death. Observe the following to achieve optimum protective effect.

- ▷ Keep your distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grip the steering wheel at the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- ▷ Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- ▷ Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Do not place any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and occupants.
- ▷ Keep the dashboard and windscreen area on the passenger side clear, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones.

- ▷ Do not glue the airbag covers and do not cover or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- ▷ Do not install seat covers, cushions or other objects on the front seats if they are not specifically designed for use on seats with integral side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang items of clothing for example coats or jackets over the backrests.
- ▷ Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- ▷ Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all this information is observed, injuries resulting from contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out in some circumstances.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss for vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety notes

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental deployment of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or even death. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service

Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display in the instrument cluster



When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Malfunction



- ▷ The warning lamp does not illuminate after drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The warning lamp is permanently illuminated.

Have the system checked.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Key switch for front passenger airbags

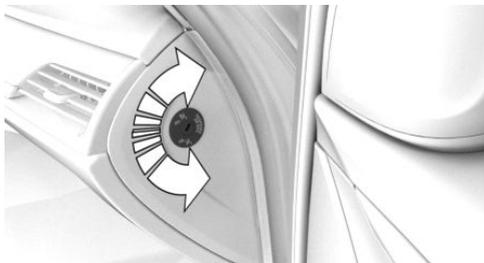
Principle

When a child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated using the key switch for front passenger airbags.

General

The front and side airbags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Overview



The key switch for front passenger airbags is located on the outside of the dashboard.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are deactivated.

The front passenger airbags are deactivated. The driver's airbags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag status is displayed by the indicator lamp on the roof lining.

Activating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are activated.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags in the roof lining shows the operating status of the front passenger airbags.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
	If the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period and then extinguishes.
	When front passenger airbags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated.

Active pedestrian protection

Principle

The active pedestrian protection system raises the bonnet if the vehicle's front end collides with a pedestrian. Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection.

General

When triggered, the pedestrian protection system creates deformation space underneath the bonnet in readiness for the subsequent head impact.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system may trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.

WARNING

Modifications to the pedestrian protection system can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not modify the pedestrian protection system, its individual components or its wiring. Do not dismantle the system.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity.



There is a danger of injury or even death. Have the system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the system has triggered or is damaged, its functions will be restricted, or it may no longer work at all. There is a danger of injury or even death.

If the system has triggered or is damaged, have it checked and renewed at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection system has triggered may damage the bonnet or the pedestrian protection system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

The active pedestrian protection system is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, 18 mph and 55 km/h, 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- ▶ Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- ▶ Collision with animals.
- ▶ Stone impact.
- ▶ Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction



A Check Control message is shown.

The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables the Driver Assistance Systems to be operated centrally.

General

Depending on the equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can help to avoid the risk of a collision.

- ▶ Front-end collision warning with braking function.
- ▶ Avoidance assistant.
- ▶ Junction warning with City braking function.
- ▶ Person warning with City braking function.
- ▶ Lane Departure Warning.
- ▶ Lane Change Warning.
- ▶ Side collision warning.
- ▶ Road priority warning.
- ▶ Wrong-way driving warning.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the

traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety Systems are automatically active at the start of each journey. Some Intelligent Safety Systems are activated according to the last setting.

Button Status

-  Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
-  Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
-  Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

 Press the button:
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for example the setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button:
All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Front-end collision warning with light braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

The system is controlled using the following sensors, depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ Radar sensor in front bumper.

From speeds of approximately 5 km/h, 3 mph, the system provides a two-stage warning of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

When deliberately moving closer to a vehicle, the front-end collision warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unjustified system responses.

Depending on the equipment, the Driver Attention Camera detects the driver's view behaviour in the instrument cluster. The system also checks whether there are any visual impairments present. The view behaviour and visibility conditions also affect the point at which the warnings are issued.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

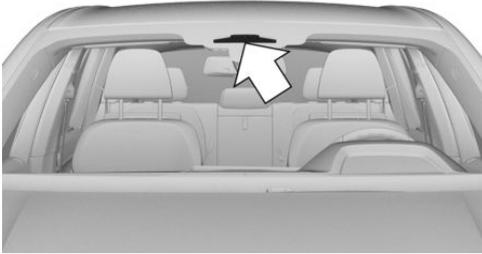
Overview

Button in the vehicle



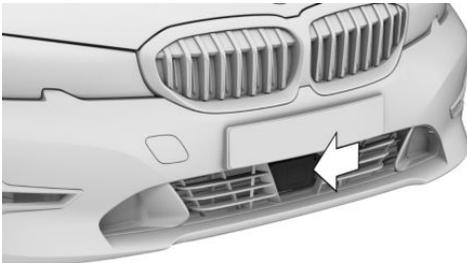
 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is in the lower area of the front bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button. The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be

configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button. All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front-collision warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.



The selected time is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol Measure



Symbol illuminates red: advance warning.

Brake and increase the distance.



Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.

Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is given for example if there is an impending risk of collision or the distance from the vehicle ahead is too short.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the acute warning may be supported by a brief jolt in the brakes.

If the warning time setting is "Late", the jolt does not occur.

If necessary, the system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. When the brake is operated during a warning, the maximum necessary braking force is applied. Braking assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

City braking function: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

With radar sensor: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph, the brake intervention takes the form of a brief jolt. There is no automatic deceleration.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

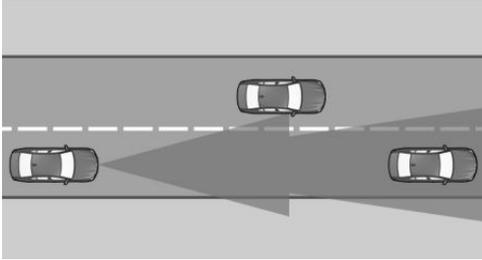
System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph. Once the speed drops back below this threshold, the system becomes responsive again according to its settings.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.

- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the radar sensors.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The higher the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings are displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and responses.

Avoidance assistant

Principle

The system supports the driver in certain situations when there is a need to avoid something, for example people or obstacles that appear suddenly.

General

The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to perform an evasive manoeuvre to the side. Sensors monitor and detect the space around the vehicle. The system then utilises the detected free space to perform the evasive manoeuvre by steering the vehicle safely and precisely in the direction specified by the driver.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.



Front bumper at side.



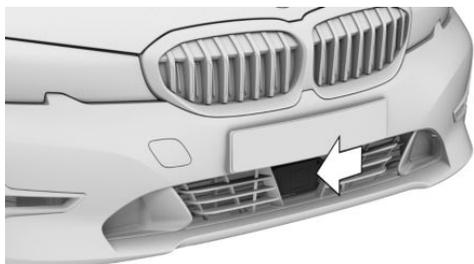
Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Overview

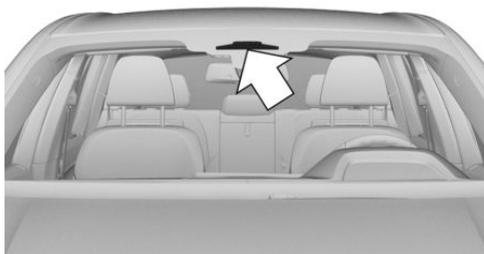
Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Person warning with braking function, see page 210, is switched on.
- ▷ Front-end collision warning with light braking function, see page 200, is switched on.

- ▷ The sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Warning with avoidance assistance

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for obstacles. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for people. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Acute warning with avoidance assistance

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. The system provides support for the driver's evasive manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

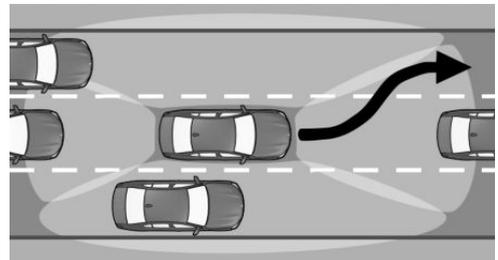
System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Function restriction

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.



- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the radar sensors.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.

Junction warning with City braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with crossing traffic at junctions and crossroads. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision in the urban speed range and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ Side radar sensors in the front bumper.
- ▷ Radar sensor in the middle of the front bumper

A warning is given at junctions and crossroads if there is a risk of collision with crossing traffic.

From speeds of approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph, the system provides a two-stage warning of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects the driver's view behaviour. The system also checks whether there are any visual impairments present. The view behaviour and visibility conditions also affect the point at which the warnings are issued.

Detection range

Vehicles that cross the vehicle's direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter the detection range of the system.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

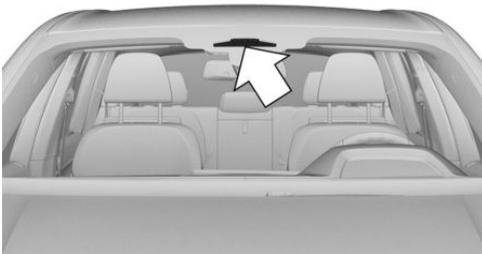
Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

Overview**Button in the vehicle**

 Intelligent Safety

Camera

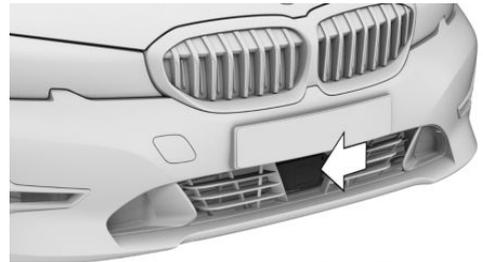
The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the front bumper.



Front bumper at side.



Front bumper in middle.

Keep the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off**Automatic activation**

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front-collision warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

**Sym-
bol**

Measure



Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from right.



Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from left.



Risk of collision with vehicle with unidentifiable direction of travel.

Advance warning:

Symbol illuminated in red: advance warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

The driver must intervene personally, for example by braking.

Acute warning:

Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is displayed, for example, if there is an impending risk of a collision with a crossing vehicle.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed if there is an imminent risk of a collision with a crossing vehicle.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. Where required, the system can assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

The vehicle can be braked to a stop.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

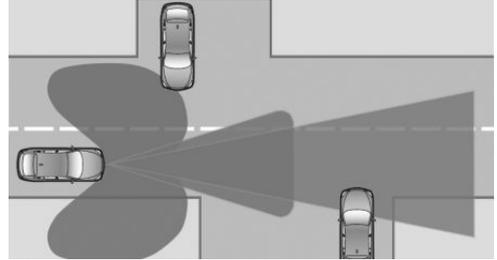
The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property.

Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system reacts to crossing vehicles if your own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▶ Crossing vehicles concealed by buildings, for example.
- ▶ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▶ Crossing two-wheeled vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends.
- ▶ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ If the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▶ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The higher the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings are displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and responses.

Person warning with City light braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians and cyclists. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision in the urban speed range and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

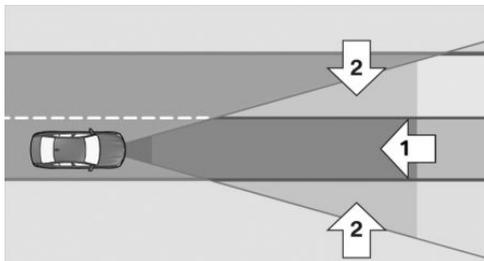
At speeds above approx. 5 km/h, 3 mph, the system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists.

Pedestrians and cyclists are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

The system is controlled using the following sensors, depending on the equipment:

- ▷ Camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ Radar sensor in front bumper.

Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended zone, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given if persons are in the extended zone if they are moving towards the central zone.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

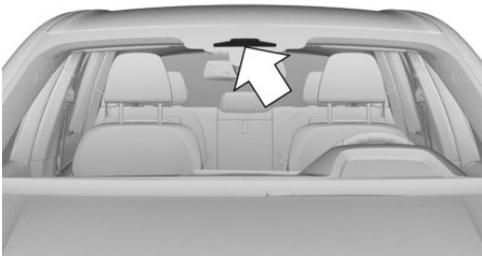
Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

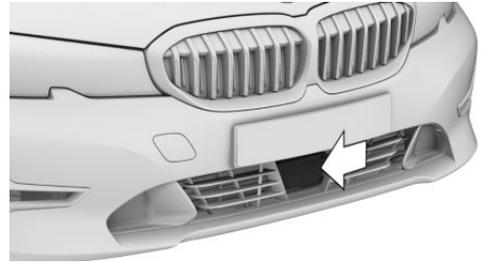
Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

Overview**Button in the vehicle**

 Intelligent Safety

Camera

The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

With radar sensor

The radar sensor is in the lower area of the front bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off**Automatic activation**

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button.
All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or a cyclist, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

 A red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.

 Alternatively, depending on the equipment, a red warning triangle illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Take action yourself immediately by braking or swerving.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. If the brake is operated during a warning, maximum braking force will be applied. Braking force assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

In addition, the system can assist with a brake intervention if there is the risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

System limits

Safety note

 **WARNING**

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property.

Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system reacts to pedestrians and cyclists if your own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

As a result, the system may fail to give warnings or may give warnings late.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially concealed pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians who are not detected as such due to the viewing angle or outline.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians less than approximately 80 cm, 32 in tall.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in some situations, for example:

- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends.
- ▶ If vehicle stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment version: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▶ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ In the dark.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning issues a warning if the vehicle leaves the road or its lane.

General

This camera-based system warns once a minimum speed has been reached.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

Warnings are issued in the form of steering wheel vibrations. The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates in the corresponding direction before leaving the driving lane.

Depending on the equipment, if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may intervene not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The system thereby helps to keep the vehicle in lane.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the course of the road and the traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane marking must be detected by the camera in order for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

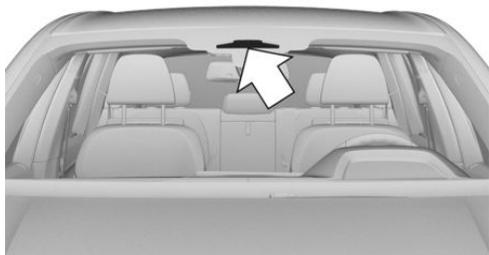
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

Lane Departure Warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button. The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button. All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Early"

- ▷ "Medium"
- ▷ "Reduced": depending on the situation, some warnings are suppressed, for example during overtaking manoeuvres without using turn indicators or when deliberately crossing lane markings on bends.
- ▷ "Off": no warnings are given.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Switching steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Display in the instrument cluster



The symbol is illuminated green: a lane marking has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

When leaving the lane

If the vehicle leaves the lane and the lane marking is detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn indicator is switched on before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment, if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may intervene not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time. With active steering intervention, the display flashes in the instrument cluster.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment, if the system executes an active steering intervention multiple times within 3 minutes without the driver touching the steering wheel, an acoustic warning is emitted. A short warning signal sounds on the second steering intervention. A longer warning signal sounds from the third steering intervention onwards.

A Check Control message is also displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message tell the driver to pay more attention to the lane.

Cancellation of the warning

The warning is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approximately 3 seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ If the vehicle is braking heavily.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane markings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.

- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

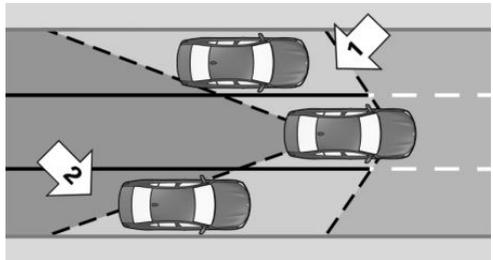
A Check Control message may be displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Lane Change Warning

Principle

Lane Change Warning detects vehicles in the blind spot, or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. Different levels of warning are given in these situations.

General



Operational from a minimum speed, two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is shown in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror illuminates at a dimmed level.

Before changing lanes with the turn indicator switched on, the system issues a warning in the above situations.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision warning: at speeds of up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system can respond with a brief active steering intervention and thus help to return the vehicle to its lane. The steering intervention is carried out above a minimum speed. This minimum speed is shown on the Control Display in the steering intervention menu.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The Lane Change Warning is reactivated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button.
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button. All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. Select the desired setting.

- ▷ "Early"
- ▷ "Medium"
- ▷ "Late"
- ▷ "Off": no warning is output for this setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



Advance warning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn indicator is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning is terminated when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal is deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision warning

If there is no response to the steering wheel vibrating and a lane marking is crossed at speeds of up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system intervenes if necessary with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

Flashing the light

When the vehicle is unlocked, the system performs a self-test by flashing the light.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

At speeds below approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

In vehicles with side collision warning, the steering intervention may be limited in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane mark-

ings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.

- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Warning displays

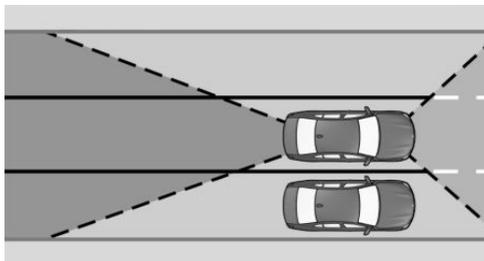
Depending on the selected setting for warnings, for example the warning time, it is possible that more warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Side collision warning

Principle

The system helps to avoid potential side collisions.

General



Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle from a minimum speed up to approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

A front camera detects the position of the lane markings.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle – for example, with the potential of a side collision – the system helps the driver to avoid a collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning in the form of the LED on the exterior mirror flashing and the steering wheel vibrating. The system may execute an active steering intervention.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly

or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane markings must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



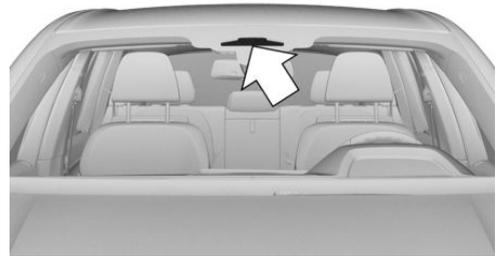
Front bumper.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The side collision warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be

configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button. All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



Acute warning

In the event of imminent collision danger, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating. A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Subsequently, an active steering intervention may be executed to avoid the collision and to keep the vehicle safely within its driving lane.

Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.
- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane markings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

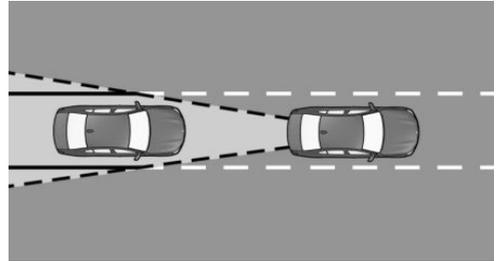
A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Prevention of rear collision

Principle

The system responds to vehicles approaching from behind.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle is approaching from behind at a relevant speed, the system responds as follows:

- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on to warn the traffic behind if there is a risk of a rear collision.
- ▷ Active Protection, see page 233: if a collision appears unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ When reversing.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▷ If the approaching vehicle is travelling slowly.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensors' field of view is obscured, for example due to garage walls, hedges or mounds of snow.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.

Road priority warning

Principle

The system provides support in situations where signs or light signal systems indicate that the driver must give way.

General

The system uses a camera to evaluate the road signs and light signal systems.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the route to the system.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- ▷ At a junction.
- ▷ At a T-junction.
- ▷ On a slip road.
- ▷ At a roundabout.
- ▷ In the event of a red traffic light.

Starting from a variable minimum speed, the system issues warnings up to approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of acci-

dent. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The road priority situation must be unambiguously directed by road signs or light signal systems.

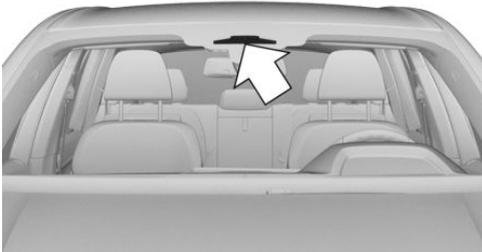
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The road priority warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was

switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

 Press the button.
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly.
The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button.
All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Give way warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.
 - ▷ "Off": no warnings are displayed.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

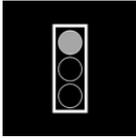
General

The system warns in two stages:

- ▷ Advance warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Acute warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

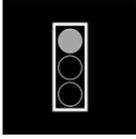
The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

The following road signs are taken into account for the road priority warning:

Signs	Meaning
	Give way signs: These signs trigger an advance warning.
	Stop signs. These signs trigger an advance warning and an acute warning.
	An advance warning and an acute warning are triggered by red traffic lights.

Advance warning

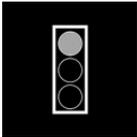
If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following symbols appears in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When a prior warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is a serious risk that road priority is about to be ignored, a signal sounds and one of the following symbols appears in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, immediately intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-Up Display

Depending on the equipment version, the warning is displayed in the Head-Up Display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No Warning

The system provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In road priority situations without “Give Way” signs, “Stop” signs or red light signal systems.
- ▷ At crossings with light signal systems that illuminate yellow or green.

Function restriction

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel road.
- ▷ In the case of country-specific signs or road layouts.
- ▷ As a result of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ At crossings with flashing light signal systems.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On steep crests or dips or on tight bends.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections; for example, if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

Wrong-way driving warning

Principle

The system issues a warning if you are about to drive the wrong way on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a road is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

General

Depending on the equipment, the system will check the traffic situation based on navigation data and road signs.

The system will take into account road signs such as the following:

- ▷ No entry.
- ▷ Roundabout.
- ▷ Direction arrows: keep right/left signs.

Safety notes

! WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

! WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The road layout ahead must be unambiguously indicated by road signs.

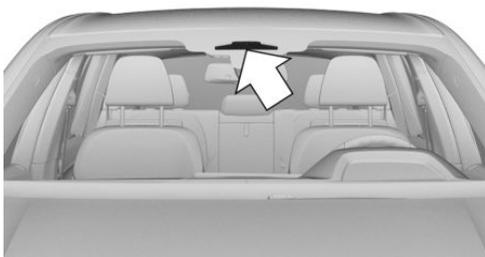
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The wrong-way driving warning is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching off manually

If all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off together via the button, the wrong-way driving warning is also switched off.



Press and hold the button:

The wrong-way driving warning and all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning function

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a motorway, roundabout or one-way street is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property.

Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No Warning

The system provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the road layout is not indicated by road signs.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in situations such as the following and an incorrect warning, or no wrong-way driving warning at all, may be given:

- ▷ If the road signs are ambiguous.
- ▷ If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- ▷ If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.
- ▷ If the road signs are too small or too large.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel road.
- ▷ In the case of country-specific signs or road layouts.
- ▷ As a result of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On steep crests or dips or on tight bends.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections; for example, if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

Emergency stop assistant

Principle

If the driver is no longer capable of driving, the system helps to bring the vehicle safely to a standstill.

General

The emergency stop function is not triggered automatically. The emergency stop function can only be triggered manually by the vehicle occupants.

If the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill within its own lane by means of tracking.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and national-market version, the system may have a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or similar roads, the system steers the vehicle to the hard shoulder if possible. On other roads or in heavy traffic, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in the lane it is currently in.

Overview



 Parking brake

Operating requirements

- ▷ The function can be activated at speeds of 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph to approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.
- ▷ Lane changes are carried out at speeds of approx. 70 km/h, approx. 43 mph to approx. 100 km/h, approx. 62 mph.

Activating the emergency stop function

 Briefly press the switch for the parking brake to activate the emergency stop function.

- ▷ With lane change function: when the switch is released, an automatic lane change is triggered if necessary.
- ▷ The system takes over vehicle control for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▷ An emergency call is triggered.

Cancelling the emergency stop function

At any time during the process, the driver can cancel the emergency stop function by actively taking control of the vehicle.

For example, the emergency stop function can be cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ When steering.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ When accelerating.
- ▷ When the hazard warning lights are switched off.
- ▷ When the emergency call is cancelled.
- ▷ When the selector lever position is changed while at a standstill.

- ▶ When the driver's foot is still on the accelerator pedal when the function is triggered.
- ▶ When the parking brake switch is pressed.

When the vehicle is at a standstill

As soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, the system configures the following settings:

- ▶ Selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▶ Parking brake is applied.
- ▶ Interior light is switched on.
- ▶ Central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol Status



Emergency stop function active.

Without lane change function:

Symbol Status



Steering wheel symbol green:
If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.



Steering wheel symbol grey:
Lane tracking interrupted briefly.



Steering wheel symbol yellow:
Lane marking driven over.
If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.



Steering wheel symbol yellow:
Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.

Symbol Status



Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal:

Hands are not around the steering wheel. Interruption of lane tracking is imminent.



Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal:

Lane tracking is switched off.

System limits

Only use the system if the driver is no longer to operate the vehicle.

The system cannot replace the kind of performance that would be delivered by a driver who is capable of driving.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind your vehicle that you are performing an emergency braking manoeuvre. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General



- ▶ Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- ▶ Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

To switch off the hazard warning lights:



- ▷ Accelerate.
- ▷ Press the hazard warning lights button.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The system saves short video recordings of the vehicle environment in order to document traffic conditions, for example.

In addition, the following journey parameters are saved:

- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ GPS coordinates.

General

There are various ways of saving video recordings.

- ▷ Automatic saving of recordings.
The function makes it possible to document the circumstances of an accident.
- ▷ Manual saving of recordings.
The function makes it possible to document traffic conditions.

The system records for up to 20 seconds before and after the save function is activated.

Cameras for assistance systems are used; for example, Panorama View.

Data protection

The reliability of the recording and the use of video recordings depend on the legal regulations in the country where the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and for complying with the provisions that apply in each case.

Before using for the first time, the vehicle manufacturer recommends checking that there are no legal or official restrictions on using the system in

the state or country in question. Additionally, the legality of using the system should be checked at regular intervals, especially if the vehicle frequently crosses borders.

If anyone else drives the vehicle, he/she must be given information about the system. Information about the system must also be provided if the vehicle is passed on to anyone else.

Operating requirements

- ▷ System is activated.
- ▷ Recording type selected.
- ▷ Recording duration selected.

Activating/deactivating

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before using the recording function for the first time.

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "Recording allowed"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording is saved automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident.

Manual recording

Using the button:



Press and hold the Panorama View button.

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Start recording"

To cancel the recording: "Cancel".

Playing and managing recordings

Saved video recordings can be played, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the recording is only shown at the front if the speed is below approximately 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. In the case of some national-market versions, the recording is only shown with the parking brake applied or with the selector lever in position P.

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Saved recordings"
4. Select the desired recording.
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Play"
 - ▷ "Pause"
 - ▷ "Export"
 - ▷ "Delete"

If the cameras switched during the recording, it is possible to select various video sections.

Settings

General

Various settings can be made.

Recording type

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "RECORDING TYPE"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Manually"
 - ▷ "Automatically"

Recording duration

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Before trigger"
Recording duration before an event.
 - ▷ "After trigger"
Recording duration after an event.

Cameras

Via iDrive:

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "Camera selection"
5. Select the desired camera.

System limits

In the event of a serious accident, recordings may not be saved if, for example, the damage to the vehicle is too extensive or the power supply was interrupted.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical driving or collision situations, Active Protection prepares the vehicle occupants and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

General

Active Protection consists of different PreCrash functions which may vary depending on the equipment installed.

The system detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such situations include:



- ▷ Full braking.
- ▷ Severe understeer.
- ▷ Severe oversteer.

Certain functions of some systems installed in the vehicle can – within the system's limits – cause Active Protection to trigger:

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with light braking function: automatic brake application.
- ▷ Front-end collision warning with light braking function: braking force assistance.
- ▷ Prevention of rear collision: detection of potential rear collisions.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that critical situations are not detected reliably or in good time. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Function

If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

In critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- ▷ Automatic pre-tensioning of the front seat belts.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows, leaving just a small gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass roof, including the sun guard.
- ▷ With comfort seat in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest of the front passenger seat.

If the critical driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the tension in the front seat belts is released again.

If the belt tension does not slacken automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button on the buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

At a standstill

Once the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly than is possible with automatic braking.

To do so, brake quickly and firmly. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than that achieved with the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking, for example for an evasive manoeuvre.

Cancel automatic braking:

- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal.

Attentiveness assistant

General

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or the onset of fatigue in the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In such situations, the system recommends you take a break.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that you, as the driver, are rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on every time drive-ready state is switched on.

After commencement of the journey, the system adapts to the driver so that any decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- ▶ Personal driving style, for example steering.
- ▶ Driving conditions, for example time of day, duration of journey.
- ▶ Depending on the vehicle equipment: attentiveness of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

The system is active from approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendations

Adjusting

The attentiveness assistant is automatically active every time drive-ready state is switched on and can thus display break recommendations.

Break recommendations can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Attentiveness Assistant"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Standard": the break recommendation is issued with a defined value.
 - ▶ "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
 - ▶ "Off": no break recommendation is issued.

Display

If the driver shows signs of decreasing attention or of fatigue, a message is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display.

After a break, another break recommendation cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes at the earliest.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in situations such as the following and an incorrect warning, or no warning at all, may be given:

- ▶ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▶ When the speed is predominantly below approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph.



- ▷ If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- ▷ In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- ▷ In poor road conditions.
- ▷ In strong crosswinds.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped, for example when taking a break during a long motorway journey.

Driving Stability Control Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even during full braking, thereby enhancing active road safety.

ABS is operational each time the engine is started.

Brake assist

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly, the system automatically applies maximum braking power. This keeps the stopping distance as short as possible in full braking situations. The advantages offered by the Anti-lock Brake System ABS can also be utilised to the full.

The pressure on the brake should be maintained for the duration of the full-braking process.

Adaptive brake assist

In conjunction with Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brake responds even more quickly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place by depressing the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

The vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds after the foot brake has been released.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

Principle

The system reduces engine power output and applies the brakes on individual wheels thereby helping, within the limits imposed by the laws of physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

General

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- ▷ Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.

- ▷ Loss of grip at the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Deactivate/activate DSC

General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

To assist driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC



Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Activating DSC



Press the button. DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamps are extinguished.

Display

In the instrument cluster

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.

Indicator and warning lamps



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

Principle

DTC is a variant of Dynamic Stability Control DSC and is optimised for forward momentum.

In special road conditions, for example roads on which snow has not been cleared or on a loose surface, the system ensures maximum forward momentum but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General

Activating DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is reduced.

Activating DTC briefly may be useful in the following situations:

- ▶ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▶ When starting in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Activate/deactivate DTC

Activating DTC



Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Deactivating DTC



Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light are extinguished.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator and warning lamps



The indicator lamp is illuminated: DTC has been activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, DSC is activated automatically:

- ▶ If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- ▶ In the event of a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety Systems.
- ▶ In the event of a flat tyre.

xDrive

Principle

xDrive is the four-wheel drive system of the vehicle. The interaction between xDrive and other drive control systems, such as Dynamic Stability Control DSC, further optimises traction and driv-



ing dynamics. xDrive distributes the drive forces variably between the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road surface conditions.

The Driving Experience Control makes it possible to change the four-wheel drive distribution from traction-based to sport-based.

Efficient4x4 reduces consumption by using the four-wheel drive system according to requirements.

Variable sports steering

The variable sports steering facilitates a direct and agile driving style with little steering effort.

The variable sports steering works independently of the current speed, varying the steering ratio in line with the steering angle.

Driver Assistance Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit so that speed restrictions are not exceeded.

General

The system enables speeds from a value of 30 km/h/20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Change the speed limit.

Operation

Switching on



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit. When switching on at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control may be switched on and the driving mode may be changed.

Switching off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

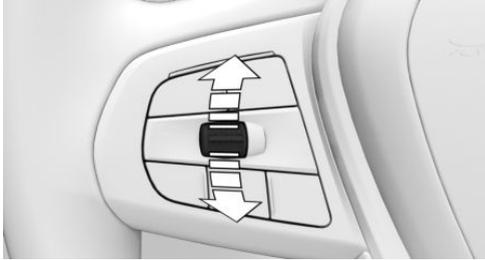
- ▷ When switching the engine off.
- ▷ When switching on Cruise Control.
- ▷ When activating some programs using the Driving Experience Control.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

The system is interrupted in reverse or when rolling backwards at idle speed.

Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, there is no active brake intervention.

If you set a speed limit while driving which is below the current speed, the vehicle coasts down to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing the button:

SET Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no warning in such a case.

To exceed the set speed limit intentionally, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning



If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- ▶ A signal sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- ▶ If the speed limit is reduced to below the driven speed during the journey, the warning sounds after a little time.
- ▶ If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal, no warning is given.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▶ Green marker: system is active.
- ▶ Grey mark: the system is interrupted.
- ▶ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp



- ▶ If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
- ▶ If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.
- ▶ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Cruise Control

Principle

This system allows a desired speed to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel. The desired speed is then maintained by the system. To do so, the system automatically accelerates and brakes the vehicle as necessary.

General

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas; for example, acceleration may change depending on the driving mode.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The risk of an accident may be increased if the system is used in certain situations, such as:

- ▷ On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, in wet conditions or on a loose road surface.

There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.

WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function

	Cruise Control on/off.
	
	To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
	To interrupt Cruise Control.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed.

Switching Cruise Control on/off

Switching on

 Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.



The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off



Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.



The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually



Press the button while the system is activated.

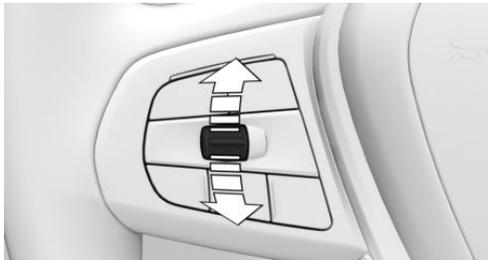
Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ If the driver brakes.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission: if the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- ▶ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▶ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

To set the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once.

If the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.



Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle and the set characteristics of the hybrid system.

- ▶ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without pressing the accelerator pedal.

The speed is maintained when the rocker switch is released. Pressing beyond the re-

distance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.

 With the system interrupted, press the button.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values. The stored speed is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▶ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▶ Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.
- ▶ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp

- ▶  Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
- ▶ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.
- ▶ No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.



The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough engine power.

Depending on the driving mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations; for example, on downward or upward gradients.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go ACC

Principle

This system allows you to set a desired speed and a desired distance from the vehicle in front, using the buttons on the steering wheel.

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the desired speed by braking or accelerating the vehicle automatically, as required.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts the speed of your vehicle in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

General

A radar sensor in the front bumper and a camera on the rear-view mirror are used to detect vehicles ahead.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas; for example, acceleration may change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be set in several stages and for safety reasons is dependent on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and sets off again shortly afterwards, the system can recognise this within the given context.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

There is a danger of accidents if the difference in speed relative to other vehicles is excessively high. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own lane.
- ▷ When quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

There is a danger of injury or even death. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With steering and lane control assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	With steering and lane control assistant: Select the function.
	Without steering and lane control assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
	With steering and lane control assistant: To interrupt Cruise Control. To resume Cruise Control with last setting.

Button Function**RESUME**

Without steering and lane control assistant:
To resume Cruise Control with last setting.

CANCEL

Without steering and lane control assistant:
To interrupt Cruise Control.



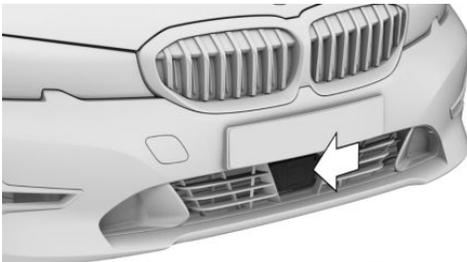
Increase the distance.
Switch distance control on/off.



Reduce the distance.
Switch distance control on/off.

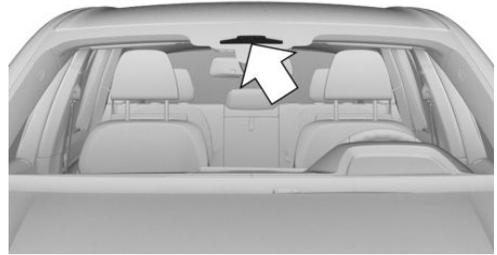


Rocker switch:
Set the speed.

Radar sensor

The radar sensor is located on the front in the bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera

The camera is located near the rear-view mirror.
Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Use

The system can be used to optimum effect on well-constructed roads. The system is operational from a speed of approximately 30 km/h/20 mph.

The maximum speed which can be set when driving with a combustion engine is limited and depends on the vehicle and its equipment, for example.

After toggling the Cruise Control without distance control, even higher desired speeds can be selected when driving with the internal combustion engine.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Switching Cruise Control on/off and interrupting**With steering and lane control assistant: Assisted Driving****General**

The button is used to switch the set function on and off.



The button is used to set the primary function.



Setting the function

1.  When the system is active, press the button until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The Assisted Driving function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

▷  Cruise Control with distance control.

▷  Depending on equipment, Cruise Control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant:

▷  Depending on equipment, Cruise Control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant:

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Switching on

With steering and lane control assistant:

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.  Set Cruise Control if necessary.

Without steering and lane control assistant:

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

 Without steering and lane control assistant.

 With steering and lane control assistant.

The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When the system is activated, press the following button on the steering wheel:

 Without steering and lane control assistant.

 With steering and lane control assistant.

If interrupting the system when the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of position D.
- ▷ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.
- ▷ If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- ▷ If the system has not detected any objects for an extended period of time, for example on roads with little traffic and without defined boundaries.

- ▶ If the detection zone of the radar is disrupted, for example due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- ▶ After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

To set the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once. The system is activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.



Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

To repeat an action, hold the rocker switch in the relevant position.

Setting the distance

General

The distance setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that braking is performed too late. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Pay close attention to the traffic conditions at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and

weather conditions and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.

To reduce the distance

 Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increasing the distance

 Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.

With the system interrupted, press the following button on the steering wheel:

 Without steering and lane control assistant.

 With steering and lane control assistant.

Cruise Control is resumed with the saved values.

The stored speed is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not respond to traffic traveling in front of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.

Switching the Cruise Control mode

Switch Cruise Control without distance control on and off:

- ▷  Press and hold the button.
- ▷  Press and hold the button.

Without steering and lane control assistant: switch on distance control:

- ▷  Press the button.
- ▷  Press the button.

With steering and lane control assistant: switch on distance control:

 Press the button.

A Check Control message is then displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

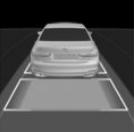
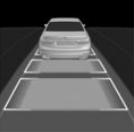
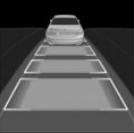
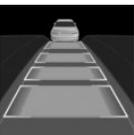


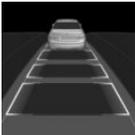
- ▷ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▷ Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.

- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

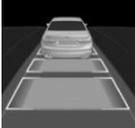
Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3 Corresponds to approximately half of the value of the speedometer reading, expressed in metres. Selected when the system is switched on for the first time.
	Distance 4

Symbol	Description
	System interrupted.
	No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: Vehicle ahead detected.

The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

The vehicle symbol in the distance display moves away as soon as the detected vehicle pulls away.

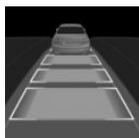
To accelerate, activate ACC, for example by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal or rocker switch.

Indicator and warning lamps

Symbol	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
	No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.



Vehicle symbol flashes:
The requirements for system operation are no longer being met.
The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.



Vehicle symbol and distance bar flash red and an acoustic signal sounds:
Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Alternative displays

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are indicated as follows:

Symbol	Description
	White vehicle symbol: No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Green symbol: Vehicle ahead detected. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected. Vehicle symbol flashes green: The vehicle driving in front has set off.

Symbol	Description
	Grey symbol: System interrupted.
	Symbol flashes grey: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Desired speed

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

 The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

Distance information

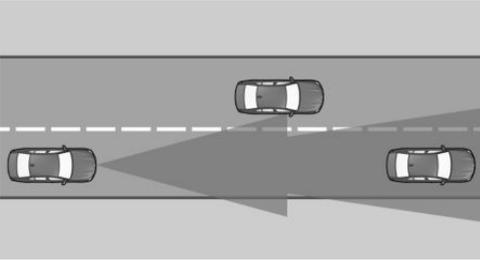
 The symbol is shown if the distance from the vehicle in front is too close.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▶ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▶ Display in the Head-Up Display selected, see page 182.
- ▶ Distance too close.
- ▶ Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

System limits

Detection range



The system's detection capability and automatic braking capacity are limited.

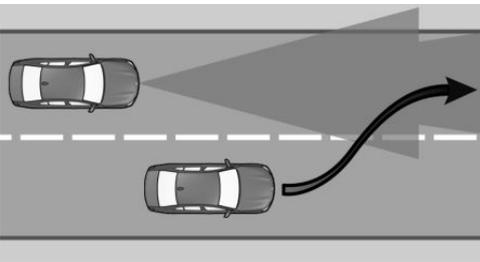
For example two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▶ For pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- ▶ For red traffic lights.
- ▶ For crossing traffic.
- ▶ For oncoming vehicles.

Vehicles pulling out

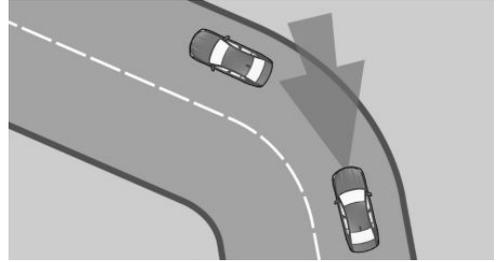


A vehicle driving ahead of you is only detected when it is fully in your driving path.

If another vehicle suddenly pulls out in front of you, the system might not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving signifi-

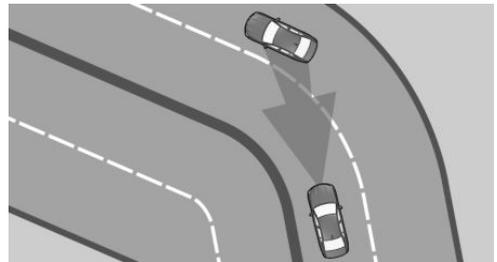
cantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the bend. However, the system does not detect bends in advance. For this reason, moderate your speed when cornering.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.



Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep upward gradients.
- ▷ Before bumps or rises in the road.

In such cases, depress the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough engine power.

Depending on the driving mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations; for example, on downward or upward gradients.

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not correctly aligned, for example if it is damaged while parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system has failed.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The system may have limited functionality if the radar sensor detection range is partially covered, for example by the number plate holder.

Camera

Detection and response to stationary vehicles when approaching may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ Failure or soiling of the camera. A Check Control message is shown.

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

When the systems in the vehicle (Speed Limit Info, for example) detect a change in the speed limit on the route, it is possible to adopt this new speed limit value for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function.

The speed value is proposed as a new desired speed for adopting. The relevant system must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

Depending on the equipment, the destination system and the country specifications, it may be possible for the value to be adopted automatically.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Adopt the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed; see Cruise Control.

Switching on/off and adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Info on speed limits"
7. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Adjust automatically": the detected speed limit is adopted automatically.
- ▷ "Adjust manually": the detected speed limit can be adopted manually.
- ▷ "Show anticipation": detected speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being adopted.
- ▷ "Off": Speed Limit Assist is switched off.
Other proactive comfort functions – the route-ahead assistant, for example – may be switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster if the system and the Cruise Control are switched on.

Symbol	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment, the indicator lamp is illuminated green, together with the symbol for Cruise Control: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.
AUTO	The indicator lamp is illuminated green, together with the symbol for the speed control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted automatically for the displayed system.

Symbol Function



Detected change in speed limit detected with immediate effect.

Distance information shown alongside the symbol indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.



Indicator lamp is illuminated green: the detected speed limit can be adopted with the SET button.

As soon as the speed limit has been adopted, a green tick is displayed.

Adopting the detected speed limit automatically

In automatic mode, a detected speed limit is automatically adopted for Cruise Control.



Press the button to switch back to the last value set.

Adopting the detected speed limit manually

A detected speed limit can be applied to Cruise Control manually.



As soon as the SET symbol lights up, press the button.

Adapting to the route

Principle

The system can be set so that it adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For example, the speed is reduced in the following situations if necessary:

- ▷ Before turning off.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a bend.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Adjust to route details"

Speed adjustment

Principle

It is possible to set whether the speed limit will be accepted exactly, or with a tolerance.

General

It is possible to set a speed adjustment for all speeds and an additional speed adjustment for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph.

The additional speed adjustment for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph can be activated or deactivated.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for speed adjustment with an effect on all speeds.
 - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set additional tolerance for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph.
 - ▷ "2nd adjustment to": activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Take into account the Speed Limit Info system limits, see page 179.

Depending on the country, displayed speed limits may not be available for acceptance, or may only be available to a limited extent, for example with speed information from the navigation system.

Cruise Control without distance control: depending on the system, it may not be possible to adopt speed limits automatically.

Speed limits that are ahead may only be adopted for Active Cruise Control.

Steering and lane control assistant

Principle

The system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane. To do this, the system assists by performing steering movements, for example when cornering.

General

The system detects the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving in front using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orientates itself using the lane markings and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off.
	Set the function.



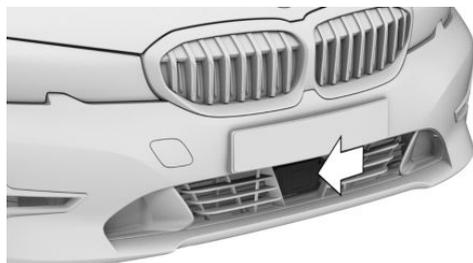
Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off.



Set the function.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.



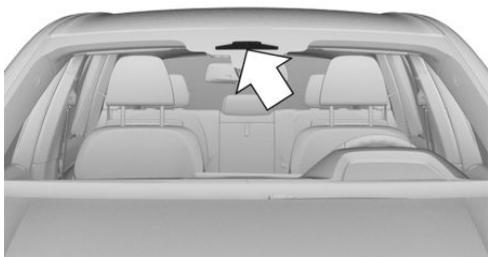
Front bumper at side.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Speed under 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▷ The driving path is sufficiently wide.
- ▷ Above 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane marking detected.

- ▷ Below 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane marking or a vehicle ahead detected.
 - ▷ Hands on the steering wheel.
 - ▷ Sufficient corner radius.
 - ▷ Driving in the centre of the lane.
 - ▷ Turn indicator switched off.
 - ▷ The sensor system calibration process is complete.
 - ▷ Cruise Control with distance control is active.
 - ▷ Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- The following systems must also be active:
- ▷ Front-end collision warning.
 - ▷ Person warning.
 - ▷ Side collision warning.

Switching on/off

Assisted Driving

General



The button is used to switch the set function on and off.



The button is used to set the primary function.

Setting the function

1.  When the system is active, press the button until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The Assisted Driving function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.
 - ▷  Cruise Control with distance control.
 - ▷  Depending on equipment, Cruise Control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant:



- ▷ Depending on equipment, Cruise Control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant:

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Switching on

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
-  Adjust the steering and lane control assistant if necessary.

 Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.
System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

 Steering wheel symbol illuminates green.
The system is active.

When the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision warning are active.

Switching off

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The display is no longer illuminated.

The system does not execute any supporting steering movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ At a speed above 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is turned sharply.

- ▷ When leaving your own lane.
- ▷ With the turn indicator switched on.
- ▷ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▷ If no lane marking has been detected for a certain time and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- ▷ If Active Cruise Control is interrupted.
- ▷ If the seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.



Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol grey: System on standby.
	Steering wheel symbol green: System is activated.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and an acoustic signal, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.

Symbol Description



Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol:
The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in lane.



Steering wheel symbol yellow:
Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.



Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal:
Hands are not around the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent.
The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.
It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Indicator lamp Description



Depending on equipment, Cruise Control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant:
Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.

Displays on the steering wheel



The two LEDs above the button fields are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▶ Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- ▶ Red: system is deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Lighting elements"
6. Confirm the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

All the system information can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display.

Assisted Driving Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Plus helps the driver to control the vehicle in traffic queues.

Steering assistance takes place without the driver actively steering.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic conditions, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Operating requirements of the steering and lane control assistant are met, see page 258.
- ▶ The steering and lane control assistant is active.
- ▶ The function is only available on certain road types, for example motorways.
- ▶ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- ▶ The driving path is sufficiently wide.
- ▶ Lane markings and a vehicle ahead are detected.
- ▶ Speed under approximately 60 km/h/approx. 40 mph.
- ▶ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is looking at the traffic.
- ▶ During journeys in countries outside the vehicle's country of origin, Assisted Driving Plus must be available in the country in question.

Switching on

 As soon as all of the operating requirements have been met, Assisted Driving Plus is displayed as an additional symbol in the function bar. The function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.



Select Assisted Driving Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The symbol for Assisted Driving Plus is shown in green.

Two green LEDs are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp is shown in green in the instrument cluster.

The system starts to help the driver to control the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
	White indicator lamp: the system is ready.
	Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Displays on the steering wheel



The two LEDs above the button fields are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Green: the system is active.
- ▷ Yellow: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ Red: the system is deactivated.

System limits

General

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly in certain situations.

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- ▷ Driving when wearing gloves.
- ▷ Covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly when driving in narrow lanes, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ At road works.
- ▷ Where there are emergency lanes.
- ▷ In built-up areas.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles and lane markings.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Driver Attention Camera

Pay attention to the traffic conditions at all times.

The Driver Attention Camera detects that the driver is looking at the traffic.

The Driver Attention Camera may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ If the driver is wearing sunglasses that block infrared light.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC provides assistance when parking the vehicle. Objects in front of or behind the vehicle as it slowly approaches are indicated by means of acoustic signals and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the flank protection function.

General

The ultrasonic sensors for measuring distances are located in the bumpers, and if applicable on the side of the vehicle.

Their range is approximately 2 m, 6 ft, depending on the obstacle and environment.

An acoustic warning sounds is given when the vehicle is approx. 70 cm, 27 in away from an object and a collision is imminent.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when Park Distance Control PDC is activated, the warning may be delayed due to the physical conditions. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while Park Distance Control PDC is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



Ultrasonic sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Operating requirements

To ensure full functionality:

- ▶ Do not cover sensors, for example by stickers, bicycle rack.
- ▶ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: when approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is below approximately 4 km/h, 2.5 mph. The activation distance depends on the individual situation.

Automatic activation on detection of obstacles can be enabled and disabled.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. If applicable, "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the equipment version, a respective camera view is switched on additionally.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Warning

Acoustic signals

General

An intermittent sound indicates that the vehicle is approaching an object. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object, the shorter the intervals become.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, a continuous tone sounds.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, and they are at a distance of less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and the continuous tone are switched off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Once the vehicle is at a standstill, the intermittent sound switches off after a short while.

Volume control

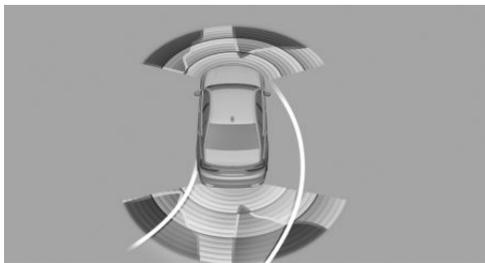
The PDC acoustic signal volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Visual warning



The vehicle's approach to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away are already displayed before an acoustic signal is given.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The recording range of the sensors is shown in green, yellow and red if obstacles are detected within the range.

Driving path lines are displayed for better estimation of the space required.

If the rear-view camera image is shown, it is possible to change over to PDC or, if required, to another view with obstacle markings:

1. If necessary, push the Controller to the left.
2. For example "Parking sensors"

Crossing traffic warning, see page 283: depending on the equipment, the PDC display also warns about vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

Depending on the equipment version: emergency braking function, Active PDC

Principle

The emergency brake function of PDC initiates emergency braking if there is an imminent risk of a collision.

General

Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available at speeds below walking speed when driving or rolling in reverse.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator and release it again.

If the accelerator is depressed for longer, the vehicle pulls away. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Temporary switch-off

The emergency braking function can be switched off temporarily:

Confirm the message on the Control Display.

If the journey is continued in these environmental conditions, no further emergency braking is performed.

Settings

The system can be activated or deactivated. It is possible to set which areas of the vehicle are protected by the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"

4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

With Parking Assistant: flank protection

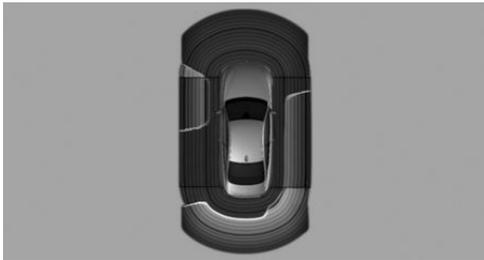
Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

General

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ Grey markings, hatched surface: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ No markings, black surface: the area adjacent to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

Limits of flank protection

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The markings are shown in black after a certain time when the vehicle is sta-

tionary. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

System limits

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Limits of ultrasound measurement

Certain conditions and objects may push ultrasound measurement to its physical limits, including the following:

- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ External interference with the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ Sensors which are dirty, iced up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions; for example, high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ Trailer drawbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ Moving objects.
- ▷ Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ Objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ Objects with porous surfaces.

- ▶ Small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▶ Obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▶ Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▶ Plants or shrubs.
- ▶ Low objects already indicated, for example kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▶ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

False alarms

Under the following conditions, the system may issue a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detection range:

- ▶ In heavy rain.
- ▶ If the sensors are heavily soiled or covered with ice.
- ▶ If the sensors are covered with snow.
- ▶ On rough road surfaces.
- ▶ On uneven surfaces, for example speed bumps.
- ▶ In large, rectangular buildings with smooth walls, for example underground car parks.
- ▶ In washing bays and car washes.
- ▶ Due to dense exhaust fumes.
- ▶ Due to other ultrasonic sources, for example sweeping machines, steam-jet cleaners or neon lights.

To reduce false alarms, for example in automatic car washes, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary.

Malfuction

A Check Control message is shown.



A white symbol is shown and the capture area of the sensors is shown in dark colour on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another

qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Without Surround View: rear-view camera

Principle

The rear-view camera provides assistance when reverse parking or manoeuvring. It does this by showing an image of the area behind the vehicle on the Control Display.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

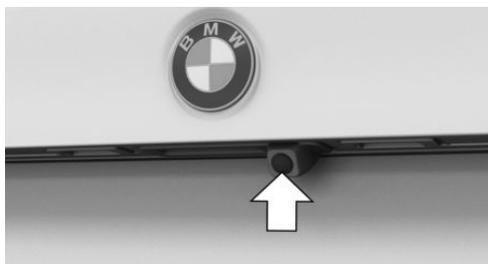
Overview

Depending on the equipment: button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle strip of the boot lid.

Dirt can impair the quality of the image. Clean the camera lens if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Depending on the equipment: switching on/off manually

 Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rear-view camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the side.

2.  "Rear view camera"

The image from the rear-view camera is shown.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The rear-view camera is switched on.
- ▷ The boot lid is completely closed.
- ▷ Keep the detection area of the camera clear. Projecting loads or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer socket can restrict the detection area of the camera.

Assistance functions

General

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

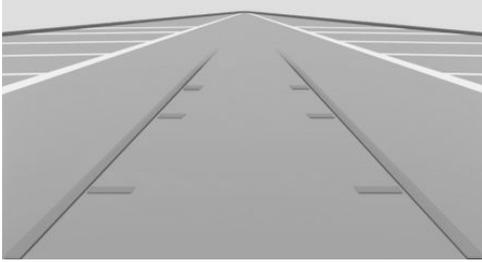
The assistance functions can be activated manually.

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2. With the corresponding equipment:  "Camera picture"
3. ▷  "Parking guide lines".
Driving path lines and turning circle lines are shown.
- ▷  "Obstacle mark.".

Depending on the equipment, the obstacles detected by Park Distance Control PDC are displayed by markings.

Parking guidance lines

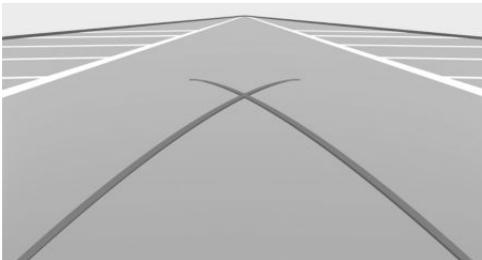
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

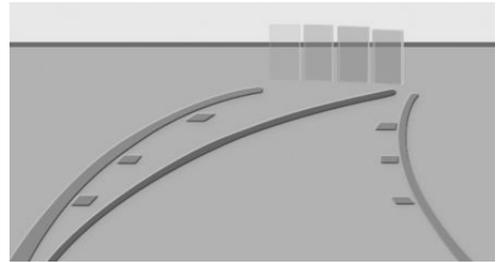
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker



Depending on the equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markers can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2.  "Camera picture"
3.  "Brightness"
  "Contrast"
4. Set the desired value.

System limits

Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for example when the boot lid is opened, the camera image is displayed as grey hatching.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

Surround View with Parking Assistant Plus

Principle

The system provides assistance with parking and manoeuvring. It does this by displaying an image of the area all round the vehicle on the Control Display.

General

Several cameras capture the area from various selectable perspectives. In addition, assistance functions, for example help lines, can be shown in the display.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▶ Automatic camera perspective: the system automatically shows the appropriate camera perspective depending on the particular driving situation.

- ▶ Rear-view camera: for showing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▶ Flank view right and left: for showing the areas to the side of the vehicle.
- ▶ Camera perspective movable using iDrive. Free camera.
- ▶ Panorama View: for representing crossing traffic, for example at junctions and exits, depending on which gear is currently engaged.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



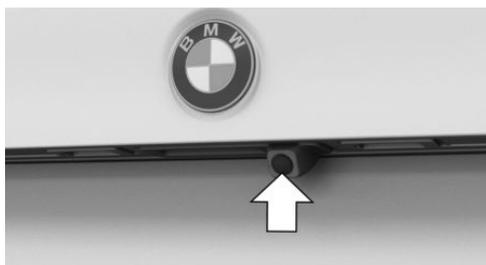
 Park Assistant button

 Panorama View

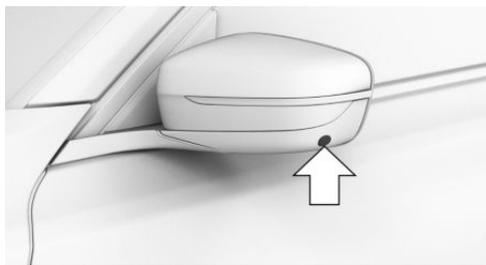
Cameras



Front camera



Rear-view camera



A camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Dirt on the camera lenses can impair the quality of the image. Clean the camera lenses if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically switched on, see page 264, if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

The camera perspective appropriate for the corresponding driving situation is shown.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

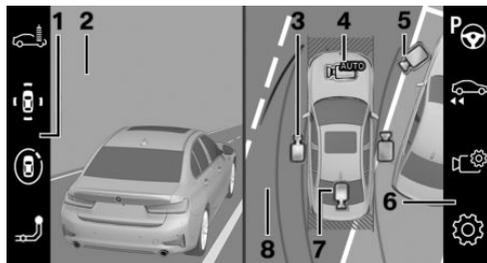
Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Camera perspectives

Overview



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Flank view
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Movable, free camera perspective
- 6 Toolbar, right
- 7 Rear-view camera
- 8 Selection window

Selection window

In the selection window, the individual camera perspectives can be selected using iDrive.

Flank view

The flank view can be selected for the right or left side of the vehicle.

This view displays the area at the side to assist with positioning the vehicle at the kerb or alongside any other obstacles.

The flank view looks from the rear to the front. If there is a hazard, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering angle-dependent view looking towards the vehicle's direction of travel.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed display of the area in front or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to a flank view.

Movable, free camera perspective

If the movable camera perspective is selected, a circular path is shown on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or using the touch function, defined perspectives along the circular path can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To exit the function, tilt the Controller to the side and select a different camera function.

Rear-view camera

This view shows the image from the rear-view camera.

Toolbars

Toolbar, right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings made using the function bar on the right. To do this, tilt the Controller to the right if necessary.

- ▷  "Park Assist".
- ▷  "Reversing Assistant".
- ▷  "Camera picture"
 - ▷  "Brightness".
 - ▷  "Contrast".
 - ▷  "Parking guide lines".
 - ▷  "Obstacle mark".
- ▷  "Settings": to perform settings, for example to use the activation points with Panorama View.

Toolbar, left

It is possible to select various views directly using the function bar on the left. To do this, tilt the Controller to the left if necessary.

- ▷  "Car wash".
- ▷  "Parking": around the vehicle.
- ▷  "3D view": free camera.

Assistance functions

General

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

The following assistance functions can be activated manually:

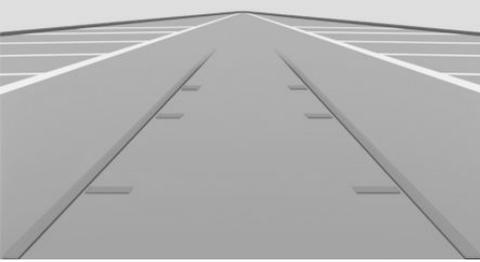
- ▷  "Parking guide lines".
- ▷  "Obstacle mark".
- ▷  "Car wash".

The following assistance functions are shown automatically:

- ▷ Flank protection.
- ▷ Door opening angle.

Parking guidance lines

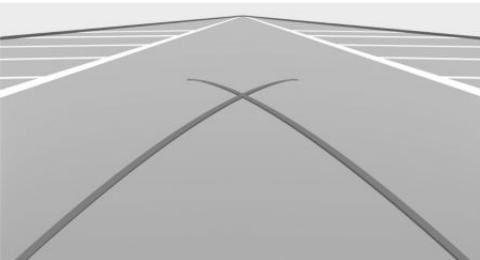
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

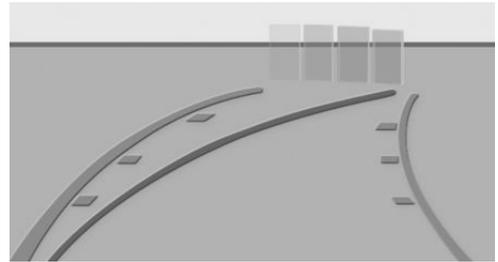
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker

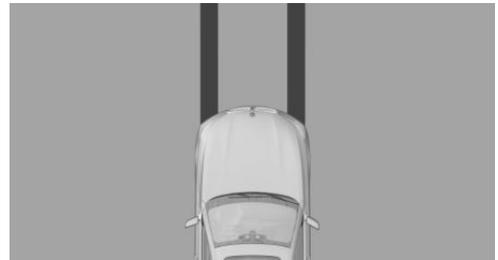


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

Washing bay view



The washing bay view provides assistance when driving into washing bays by displaying the vehicle's own tyre tracks.

Flank protection

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▷ No markings: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

Limits of flank protection

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. Consequently, the markings will no longer be shown on the display after the vehicle has been stationary for a while. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Door opening angle

Principle

If obstacle marking is activated, the system shows any fixed, stationary obstacles that are restricting the opening angle of the doors.

The system does not issue warnings about approaching road users.



Steptronic transmission: in selector lever position P, the maximum opening angles of the doors are shown.

As soon as the vehicle moves, the parking assistance lines are displayed instead of the opening angles.

Limits of the display

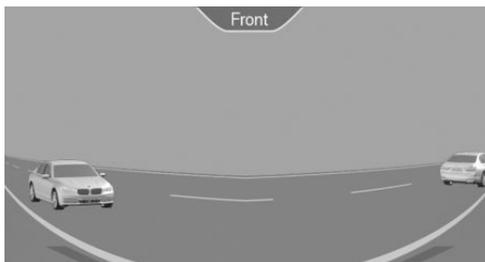
For technical reasons, the display of the area around the vehicle is distorted.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles on the Control Display are not covering any other objects, bear in mind the following when parking beside other objects:

The perspective means that protruding objects located higher up may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Principle



The system provides you with an advance view of crossing traffic at blind exits and junctions.

General

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side can only be detected very late from the driver's seat. To provide a better view, the front and rear cameras scan the areas to the side for traffic.

Yellow lines on the screen image indicate the front and rear ends of the vehicle.

The camera image is subject to varying levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Display on the Control Display



Press the button with the engine running.

The image from the relevant camera is displayed, depending on the driving direction:

- ▶ "Front": image from the front camera.
- ▶ "Rear": image from the rear camera.

Depending on the equipment, the crossing traffic warning, see page 283, can warn about approaching vehicles by means of radar sensors.

With navigation system: activation points

Principle

Locations where Panorama View is to switch on automatically can be saved as activation points provided that a GPS signal is being received.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

Activation points can be used for the front camera when driving forward.

Saving activation points

1. Drive to the location at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2.  Press the button.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

The current location is shown.

5. "Close message"

Where possible, activation points are saved with the town/city and street, otherwise with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Manage points"
A list of all activation points is shown.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Manage points"
A list of all activation points is shown.
4. Select an activation point if necessary.
5. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Rename"
 - ▶ "Delete activation point"
 - ▶ "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

When Surround View or Panorama View is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.



Via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2.  "Camera picture"
3.  "Brightness"
 -  "Contrast"
4. Set the desired value.

Functional limitations

The system can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▶ In poor light conditions.
- ▶ If the cameras are dirty.
- ▶ With a door open.
- ▶ With the boot lid open.
- ▶ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Grey hatched areas with a symbol, for example an open door, in the camera display identify areas that are not currently shown.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC, see page 263.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

Malfunction

The failure of a camera is shown on the Control Display.



A yellow symbol is shown and the capture area of the failed camera is shown in black on the Control Display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

With the corresponding equipment, the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to show the areas around the vehicle on a mobile device, for example a smartphone.

The function shows a view of the current situation.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Data transfer must be activated, see page 77.
- ▶ The BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.

Switching the function on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Configure services"
6. "BMW ConnectedDrive"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Functional limitations

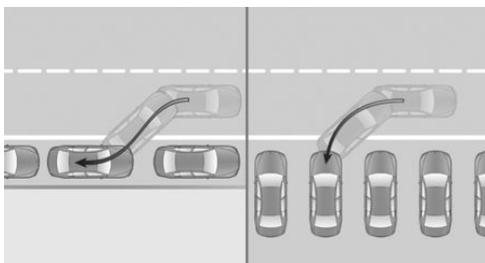
The system may have limited functionality or may not be available at all in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ In poor light conditions.
- ▶ If the cameras are dirty.
- ▶ With a door or the boot lid open. Dark areas in the display indicate areas that are not detected by the system.
- ▶ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

- ▷ When other camera functions are run in the vehicle.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving faster than at walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in all countries.
- ▷ For reasons related to data protection, the function can only be run three times in two hours.

Parking Assistant

Principle



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- ▷ When parking sideways parallel to the road: parallel parking.
- ▷ When reverse parking perpendicular to the road: perpendicular parking. The system lines up with the middle of the parking space when parking perpendicular to the road.
- ▷ When leaving parallel parking spaces.
- ▷ When reversing out, for example in the case of tight parking spaces or narrow roads, see reversing assistant.

General

Operation

Operation of Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.

- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

The status of the system and the actions required are shown on the Control Display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

Park Assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over the following functions during a parking operation:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

The parking operation takes place automatically.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

NOTE

Park Assistant may steer across or up onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

In addition, the safety notes apply for Park Distance Control PDC, see page 263.

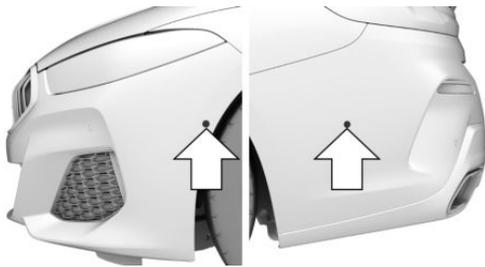
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



The system uses the four side ultrasonic sensors, arrows, and the ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers to measure parking spaces and distances to obstacles.

Operating requirements

Ultrasonic sensors

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover the sensors, for example with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ The vehicle must be driving forwards in a straight line at speeds up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.

- ▷ Maximum distance from the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

General:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that is at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.

Parking parallel to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, 2.6 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, 2.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

Drivers must estimate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces themselves. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of perpendicular parking spaces approximately.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and boot lid are closed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission:
- ▷ Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

-  Press the Park Assistant button.
- The LED is illuminated.

It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.

-  Park Assistant is automatically activated.

Switching on with reverse gear

Engage reverse gear.

It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.

Activate if necessary:  "Park Assist"

Switching on via iDrive

Rear-view camera display or PDC view must be active.

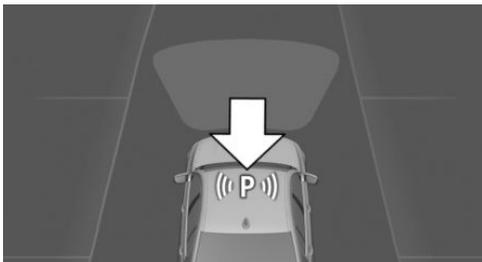
1. Tilt the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the Park Assistant on the Control Display:  "Park Assist"

Display on the Control Display

System is activated/deactivated

Sym- bol	Meaning
	Grey: system is not available. White: system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	Parking operation is active. The system has taken over steering.

Parking space search and system status



- ▷  The Park Assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- ▷ Suitable parking spaces are shown on the Control Display on the edge of the roadway next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assis-

tant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

- ▷ When perpendicular or parallel parking spaces are clearly detected, the system automatically sets the appropriate parking method. A selection menu is displayed for parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and perpendicular parking. In this case, select the desired parking method manually.
- ▷  Parking operation active. The system has taken over steering.
- ▷ The parking space search is active whenever the vehicle is driving forwards at low speed, even if the system is deactivated. If the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display may be shown in grey.

Parking with Park Assistant

Driving into a parking space

1. Switch on and activate Park Assistant.
To do this, engage reverse gear and activate the system on the Control Display or press the Park Assistant button.
 Park Assistant is activated.
2. Drive past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, 5 ft.
The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking process: select the parking space on the Control Display.
The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
Steptronic transmission:
When parking is complete, selector lever position P is engaged.

Completion of parking is indicated on the Control Display.

- 5. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Cancelling manually

You can cancel Park Assistant at any time:

- ▷  Press the Park Assistant button.
- ▷  "Park Assist" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces, if necessary.
- ▷ If it encounters objects that are difficult to negotiate, for example kerbs.
- ▷ If objects appear suddenly.
- ▷ If Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps that are too small.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the parking time is exceeded.
- ▷ If other functions are selected on the Control Display.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ If the boot lid is open.
- ▷ When doors are open.
- ▷ If the parking brake is applied.
- ▷ When accelerating.
- ▷ If the brake pedal remains pressed for a relatively long period when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

A Check Control message is shown.

Resuming

You can continue a cancelled parking operation if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

- ▷  Press the Park Assistant button.

Switching the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Park Assist"
6. "Sound if parking space detected"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Leaving a parking space with the Park Assistant

Principle

The system makes it easier to leave parallel parking spaces.

General

Steptronic transmission

The Park Assistant calculates the optimum line to take when driving out of the space and takes over the following functions during the manoeuvre:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

The vehicle manoeuvres automatically until it is in a position where the driver can drive out of the space without any further steering movements.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The vehicle has been parked manually and objects are detected in front of and behind the vehicle. The distance to a detected kerb is at least 15 cm, approx. 6 in.
- ▶ The vehicle has been parked using the Park Assistant and an object is detected in front of the vehicle.
- ▶ The parking space is at least 0.8 m, 2.6 ft longer than the vehicle.

Leaving a parking space

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission:
When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assistant button or engage reverse gear to switch on the Park Assistant.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right as applicable and activate the Park Assistant on the Control Display:  "Park Assist"
4. On the Control Display, confirm the required direction for leaving the parking space.
5. Steptronic transmission:
The system takes over the manoeuvre. A message is displayed at the end of the manoeuvre.
6. Make sure that it is safe to leave the parking space in the current traffic conditions and drive off as usual.
The Park Assistant is switched off automatically.

Reversing assistant

Principle

The system supports the driver when reversing, for example when driving out of tight or blind parking spaces or narrow roads.

The vehicle saves the driving movements for the last stretch of road. The vehicle can reverse along this saved stretch with automated steering.

General

The system takes over the steering when reversing along the saved stretch.

The driver is responsible for operating the accelerator pedal and the brake.

Operating requirements

- ▶ To save the stretch of road, drive forwards without interruption.
- ▶ A maximum of 50 metres/ 55 yards can be saved.
- ▶ To save the stretch of road, do not drive faster than 36 km/h/ 22 mph.
- ▶ The stretch of road that is to be reversed along must be at least 30 cm/12 in wider than the vehicle.

Reversing with automated steering

1. When the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on, engage reverse gear or press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Reversing Assistant"
The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display as applicable.
5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off using the accelerator pedal and brake.
When reversing, pay attention to the vehicle surroundings and, if you suddenly encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Pay attention to the PDC information.
6. Stop when you reach normal road traffic at the latest and take over control of the vehicle, for example by engaging a forward gear.

At the end of the saved stretch of road, a signal sounds and a message appears prompting you to take over control of the vehicle.

Cancelling the system

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ When a forward gear is engaged.
- ▷ When drive control systems or Driver Assistance Systems are activated or intervening.
- ▷ If the vehicle is stationary for several minutes.
- ▷ If the vehicle leaves the stored lane during reversing; for example, at the maximum steering angle.
- ▷ When the display on the Control Display is hidden by messages, for example due to incoming calls.

Limits of the reversing assistant

- ▷ When you reach normal road traffic or if you suddenly encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
 - ▷ The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approximately 9 km/h/ 6 mph.
- If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be cancelled.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No parking assistance

Park Assistant does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ In angled parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery surfaces.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If the emergency wheel has been fitted.
- ▷ If there is a change in a measured parking space.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

Limits of ultrasound measurement

Certain conditions and objects may push ultrasound measurement to its physical limits, including the following:

- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ External interference with the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ Sensors which are dirty, iced up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions; for example, high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ Trailer drawbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ Moving objects.

- ▷ Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ Objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ Objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ Obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▷ Plants or shrubs.
- ▷ Low objects already indicated, for example kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▷ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfuction

A Check Control message is shown.

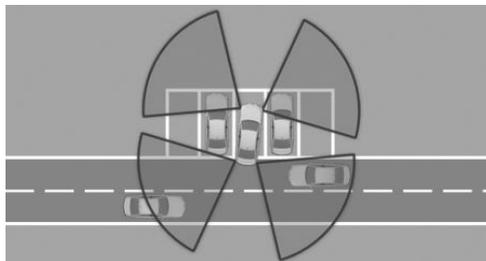
Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Crossing traffic warning

Principle

At blind exits or when leaving perpendicular parking spaces, the system detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored. For this purpose, two further radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant button

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.



Depending on the equipment, there are two additional radar sensors in the front bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

1.  Press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Cross-traffic alert"
5. "Cross-traffic alert"

Or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Cross-traffic alert"
6. "Cross-traffic alert"

Automatic activation

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is switched on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control PDC or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on the equipment, the system is switched on at the front when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ If walking speed is exceeded.
- ▶ When a certain distance is exceeded.
- ▶ When steering and lane control assistant is active: after driving for a particular distance.

When Park Assistant is actively parking the vehicle.

Warning

General

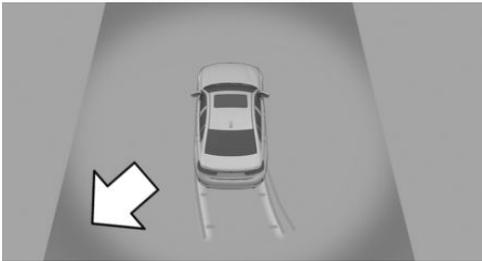
The Control Display shows the corresponding image an acoustic signal sounds, if necessary, and the light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Light in the exterior mirror



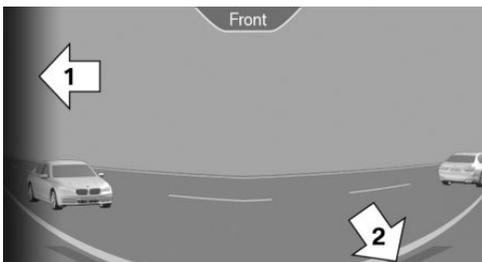
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control PDC view



In the Park Distance Control PDC view, the relevant boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Display in the camera view



The relevant boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual display, a warning signal sounds when your own vehicle is moving in the corresponding direction.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations:

- ▷ If the approaching vehicle is travelling very fast.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensors' field of view is obscured, for example due to garage walls, hedges or mounds of snow.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.
- ▷ If crossing objects are moving very slowly.
- ▷ If there are other objects in the field of view of the sensors that conceal the crossing traffic.

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The Adaptive M suspension is a controllable sports suspension. The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a dynamic driving style is used or when driving on uneven roads.

Depending on road conditions and driving style, driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced as a result.

General

The system offers various damper configurations.

The damper configurations are assigned to the different drive modes of the Driving Experience Control, see page 148.

Drive mode	Damper configuration
SPORT	Firm
SPORT PLUS	Dynamically rigid
COMFORT/ECO PRO	Balanced

Performance Control

Performance Control increases the agility of the vehicle.

Individual wheels are braked to increase agility for a sporty driving style. The resulting braking effect is largely compensated for by a simultaneous engine control action.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- ▶ Emissions-tested interior.
- ▶ Microfilter.
- ▶ Air-conditioning system for regulating temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

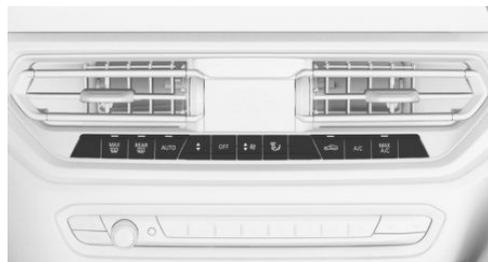
Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Microfilter/activated carbon filter.
- ▶ Automatic air recirculation control AUC.
- ▶ Independent ventilation.

Automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air-conditioning mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO programme.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Switch off.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
	Rear window heating.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, see page 129.
	Air flow, manual.

Individual functions – for example, temperature – can also be operated using spoken commands.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Switch off.
- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Complete system:

 Press the button until the control illuminates.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting

 Press the upper or lower side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"

5. "Driver"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

The interior can be cooled when drive-ready state is switched on, using the A/C button.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The cooling function is switched on when the engine is running.

Depending on the weather conditions, the windshield and side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active.

AUTO programme

Principle

The AUTO programme cools, ventilates or heats the interior automatically.

It does this by automatically regulating the air flow, air distribution and temperature depending on the interior temperature and the selected temperature setting.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, the side windows the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows.

The AUTO programme is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the air supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Operation



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The outside air supply is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Fresh air"
 - ▷ "Air recirculation"
 - ▷ "Automatic air recirculation"

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Operation

 Press upper or lower side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

Selected air flow is shown on the climate display. In order to protect the battery the air flow rate is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation

 Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

Selected air distribution is shown on the climate display.

Defrosting the windscreen and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

 Press the button. The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.

 If there is condensation on the window, press the button or switch on the cooling function. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating

 Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when the engine is running.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter

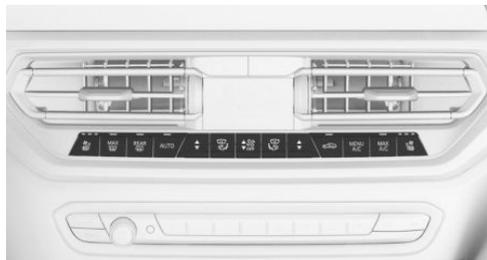
The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

Have this filter replaced during maintenance of the vehicle.

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO programme.
	Air flow, manual. Switch off.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
	Rear window heating.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, see page 129.
	Air-conditioning mode. To call up the air conditioning menu. For the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation, cooling function.

Individual functions – for example, temperature – can also be operated using spoken commands.

Calling up the air conditioning menu

 Press the button.

The air conditioning menu is displayed.

Air conditioning functions such as the following are available via the Climate menu:

- ▷ Heating/ventilation.
- ▷ Air quality.
- ▷ Seats/surfaces.
- ▷ Independent ventilation/Auxiliary heating.
- ▷ Cooling function.

It is possible to make individual settings for some air conditioning functions; for example, switching on/off, setting the intensity.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Menu.
- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.



Switching off



Hold down the button until the control shuts down.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting



Press the upper or lower side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.
8. "OK"

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Ventilation temperature

General

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The temperature is adjusted on an individual basis, for example towards the blue for colder and towards the red for warmer.

The ventilation air flow in the upper body area provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

The set interior temperature for driver and front seat passenger is not changed by this.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Temperature upper-body"
7. Set the desired temperature:
 - ▷ Towards blue: cooler.
 - ▷ Towards red: warmer.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

The interior can be cooled when drive-ready state is switched on, using the A/C button.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Climate control (A/C)"

The cooling function is switched on when the engine is running.

Depending on the weather conditions, the wind-screen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active.

AUTO programme

Principle

The AUTO programme cools, ventilates or heats the interior automatically.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are regulated automatically depending on the interior temperature, the selected temperature setting and the selected intensity setting.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature, intensity of the AUTO program and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, the side windows, the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows.

A condensation sensor also controls the programme so that window condensation is avoided as much as possible.

The AUTO programme is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Intensity

With the AUTO programme switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

 Press top or bottom side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

The air flow and air distribution are controlled automatically in line with the selected intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the climate display.

Automatic air recirculation control AUC

Principle

Automatic air recirculation control AUC detects pollutants in the outside air. The supply of outside air is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General

When the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls shut-off automatically.

When the system is deactivated, outside air flows into the interior continuously.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Automatic"

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the air supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Operation



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The outside air supply is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Fresh air"
 - ▷ "Air recirculation"
 - ▷ "Automatic air recirculation"

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Operation



Press upper or lower side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

Selected air flow is shown on the climate display.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

Selected air distribution is shown on the climate display.

SYNC programme

Principle

The following settings on the driver's side can be transferred to the front passenger's side:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO programme.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Synchronise"

The programme is automatically switched off if the settings are changed on the front passenger side.

Defrosting the windscreen and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.



If there is condensation, press the button or switch on the cooling function to use the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating



Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when the engine is running.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated carbon filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

The activated carbon filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air entering the vehicle.

Have this combined filter replaced during maintenance of the vehicle.

Ventilation

Principle

The direction of the various air flows can be set individually.

Setting the ventilation

General

The direction of the air flows can be set for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the side nozzles and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

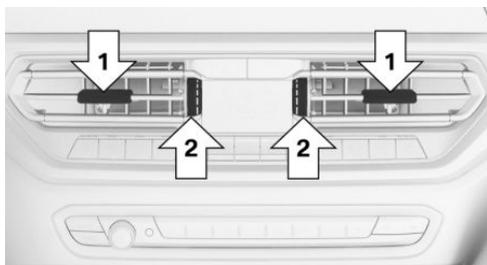
Direct ventilation

Align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The air flow provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

Indirect ventilation

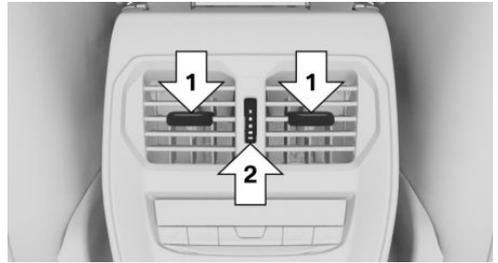
Do not align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The vehicle interior is cooled or heated indirectly depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front



- ▶ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▶ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.

Ventilation in the rear, centre



- ▶ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▶ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrow 2.

Rear automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	AUTO programme.
	Air distribution, manual.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, see page 129.
	Switch off.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Activate heating/cooling"

The rear automatic air conditioning is not operational if the automatic air conditioning is switched off or the following function is active: defrost the windows and remove condensation.

Using the button: switch on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▶ Switch off.
- ▶ Seat heating.

Using the button: switch off

 Press the button.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting

 Press the left or right side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Temperature"
7. Set the desired temperature.

Selected temperature is shown on the climate display.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.
The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

AUTO programme

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO programme and external influences, the air is directed towards the upper body and into the footwell.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Upper body area.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.

Standing air conditioning

Principle

Standing air conditioning cools or warms the interior to a comfortable temperature before starting to drive.

In addition, the system cools, ventilates or heats automatically depending on the inside and out-

side temperature. Any snow and ice can be easier to remove.

General

The standing air conditioning can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

- ▷ Switching on/off directly, see page 299.
- ▷ Air conditioning for departure time, see page 299.

The air automatically flows out of the air outlets to the windscreen, side windows, upper body area and the footwell.

The system is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

If the standing air conditioning is used during charging, less air conditioning power will be required during the journey. This optimises the range.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is in rest or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is adequately charged or charging cable is connected.

With a discharged high-voltage battery, it may take some time after connecting the charging cable before the standing air conditioning is ready to function.

- ▷ Direct operation or preselected departure time: depends on the inside, outside and set desired temperature.

Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

- ▷ To ensure the vehicle can be started, the standing air conditioning may be switched off, for example after switching on several times: switching drive-ready state on and off, the system is once again available.

Open the vents to allow the air to enter the passenger compartment.

Switching on/off directly

Principle

The system can be switched on or off in various ways.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Using the button

General

If the vehicle is in standby state, the system can be switched on or off via the buttons of the automatic air conditioning.

Switching on

Press any button, except:

- ▶ Rear window heating.
- ▶ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▶ Seat heating.

Switching off



Press and hold the down button.

The system switches itself off when you leave the vehicle.

Via iDrive

The system can be switched on or off using iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. "Start now"

Via vehicle key

The system can be switched on using the vehicle key.

The stationary air conditioning function must be set for the button on the vehicle key. For settings, see page 107.



Press the button on the vehicle key.

The system shuts down automatically after approximately 30 minutes or by activating the drive-ready state.

Display

 symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

Air conditioning for departure time

Principle

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set different departure times.

The switch-on time is automatically determined from the temperature.

Departure time with day of the week: time and day of the week can be set.

The system is switched on in good time before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

Switch-off takes place automatically a few minutes after the set departure time.

Departure time preselection is done in two stages:

- ▶ Set departure times.
- ▶ Activate departure time.

At least 10 minutes should pass between adjusting/activating the departure time and the scheduled departure time, so the climate control has enough time to work.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the required departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Activating the departure time

Operating requirements

If a departure time should influence activation of the standing air conditioning, the relevant departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. Activate "Preconditioning for departure".
6. "Departure schedule"
7. Select the required departure time.
8. Set the departure time.
9. Select the day of the week if necessary.
10. "Activate departure"

Display

 Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system signals that a departure time has been activated.

 symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

Activating with the BMW Connected App

With a corresponding BMW app with remote function, the system can be switched on at a preselected departure time or directly.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Protection from glare at the side

Folding out

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Unhook the sun visor from its holder and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding up

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located behind a cover in the sun visor. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

Ashtrays

Front centre console

Opening

1. Press the cover.



2. The ashtray is located in one of the cupholders. Fold the cover of the ashtray upwards.



Emptying



With the cover closed, pull the ashtray out of the cupholder.

Lighter

Safety notes

WARNING

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter is dropped or is held against objects. There is a risk of fire and danger of injury. There is a risk of material damage. Take hold of the lighter by its handle. Ensure that children do not use the lighter.

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console



Press the cover.



The lighter is located between the cupholders.

Operation



Press in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

Sockets

Principle

The cigarette lighter attachment can be used as a socket for electrical devices when standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

Safety notes

WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be thrown around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that devices and

cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console

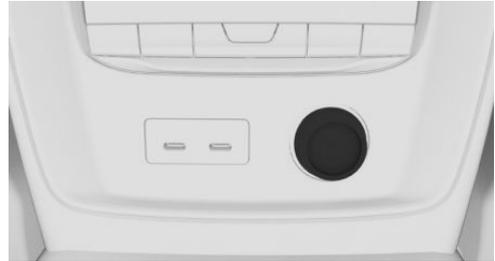
1. Press the cover.



2. The socket is located between the cupholders. Pull off the cover.



Rear centre console



There is a socket in the centre console. Pull off the cover.

Inside the boot



There is a socket on the right side of the boot. Open the cap.

USB interface

General

Please comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB interface in the chapter on USB connections, see page 85.

In the centre armrest



A USB interface is in the centre armrest.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charging current: max. 3 A.
- ▷ With navigation system: for data transfer.

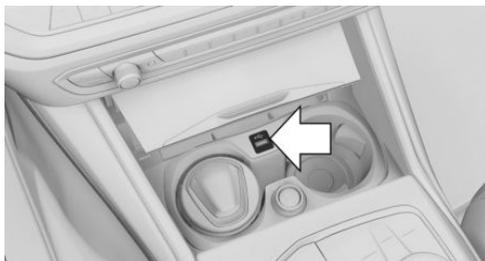
In the front centre console

NOTE

Objects in the storage compartment, for example large USB connectors, can block or damage the cover on opening and closing. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the cover is kept clear.



Press the cover.

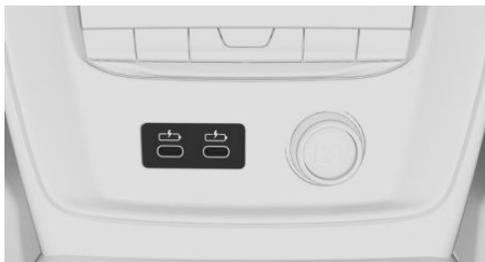


A USB interface is in the centre console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type A.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and transferring data.
- ▷ Charging current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear centre console



A USB interface with two USB ports is located in the centre console in the rear.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charging current: max. 3 A per port.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Storage facilities

General

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety notes

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

NOTE

Anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use anti-slip mats.

Glove box on the passenger side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove box comes on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

To lock

The glove box can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove box.

After the glove box has been locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the integrated key, for example if the car is being parked by a valet service.

Glove box on driver's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Pockets in the doors

General

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety note

WARNING

Breakable objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident. Shards may scatter throughout the interior. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not use breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the centre console

Opening



Press the cover.

Closing

Pull back the cover on the handle strip.

Storage compartment in the rear of the centre console

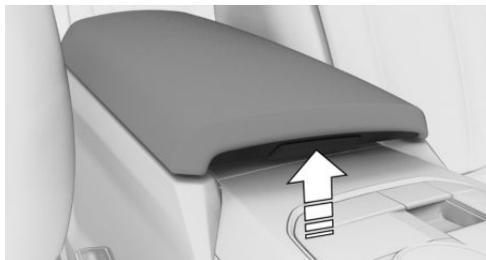
Depending on the vehicle equipment, there may be a storage compartment on the back of the centre console.

Front centre armrest

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening



Press the button.

Closing

Push the cover down until it engages.

Cupholder front

Safety note

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cupholders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not force objects into the cupholder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatter-proof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

Opening



Press the cover.



There are two cupholders in the centre console.

Closing

Pull back the cover on the handle strip.

Cupholder rear

Safety note

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cupholders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup-

holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatter-proof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

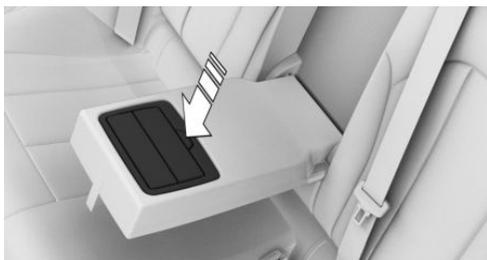
NOTE

If the cupholder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. There is a risk of material damage. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.

Opening and closing

Opening

1. Pull centre armrest forward with the loop.
2. To open the cupholder, press the button.



Closing

Push both covers back in one after the other and fold back the centre armrest.

Coat hooks

Safety notes

WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a risk of accident. Hang items of clothing from the coat hooks so they do not obstruct visibility when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are thrown around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.

General

The clothes hooks are located on the grab handles in the rear.

Boot

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Loads

Safety notes

WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can make the tyres overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure. Handling characteristics may be adversely affected, for example reduced directional stability, longer braking distance and modified steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Please comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects may slip or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Vehicle occupants could be struck and injured. There is a danger of injury. Stow and secure objects and the load correctly.

NOTE

Liquids in the boot may cause damage. There is a risk of material damage. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the boot.

Stowing and securing loads in the vehicle

- ▶ Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- ▶ Heavy loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- ▶ Very heavy loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests. If there are no passengers on the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

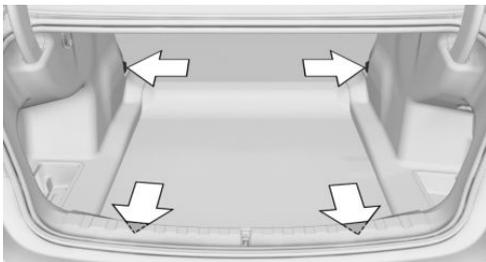
- ▷ Fully fold down the rear backrests if a large load is to be stowed.
- ▷ Do not stack load items above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and lightweight loads: secure with retaining straps, a luggage net or other suitable straps.
- ▷ Large and heavy loads: secure with lashing straps.

Lashing eyes in the boot

General

Load-securing equipment, for example lashing straps, tensioning straps or luggage nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes in the boot.

Lashing eyes



Four lashing eyes are located in the boot for securing loads.

Bag holders

General



In the boot there is a bag holder on the left-hand side.

Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the bag holders can present a danger, for example if objects are flung around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the bag holders. Only transport heavy luggage in the boot if suitably secured.

Tensioning strap

There is a tensioning strap on the left-hand trim panel for securing small objects.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left-hand side.

Side storage compartment, left

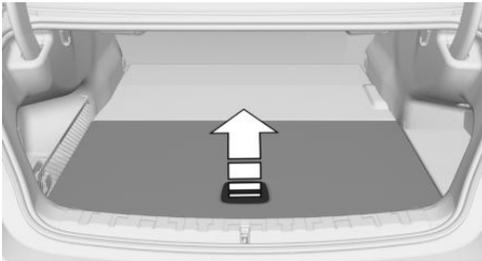
There is a storage compartment on the left side of the boot.

Storage compartment under the boot floor

General

There is a storage compartment under the boot floor.

Opening



To lift the boot floor.

For the storage compartment under the boot floor, do not exceed a maximum permitted load of 25 kg, approx. 55 lb.

Closing

Push the boot floor downwards.

Through-loading system

Principle

The boot can be extended by folding down the rear backrest.

General

The rear backrest is split 40–20–40. The rear seat backrests on each side and the middle part can be folded down individually.

The rear backrests can be folded down from the boot. The rear backrests can be folded down individually from the rear.

Safety notes

WARNING

Risk of entrapment when folding down the rear backrest. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the head restraint is kept clear.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo may be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or during braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.

WARNING

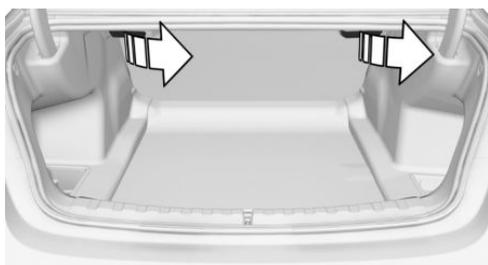
If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

 **NOTE**

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of material damage. When folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is kept clear.

Folding down the rear backrest

From the boot



Pull the corresponding lever in the boot to unlock the rear seat backrest.

- ▶ Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrests.
- ▶ Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

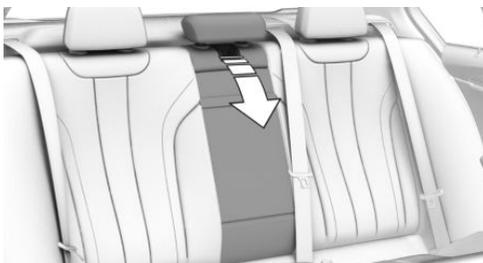
Folding back the rear backrest

Fold the rear backrest back into seat position and engage.

Folding down the middle part

1. Fold down the middle head restraint.

2. Press the button and pull the middle part forwards.



Extending the boot

General

Boot floor can be lowered for carrying bulky luggage.

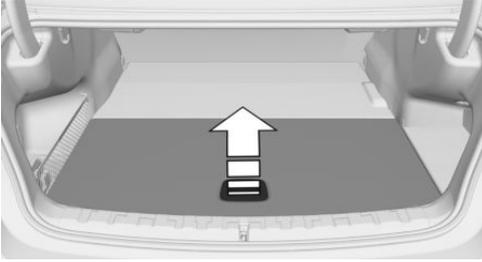
Safety note

 **NOTE**

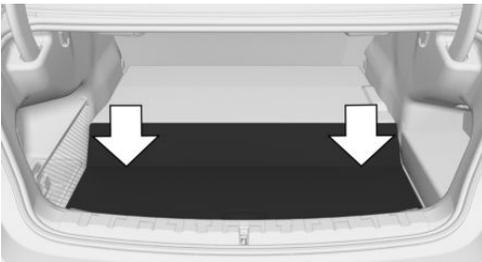
The free spaces under the boot floor are intended for the covers of the storage compartments at the sides. If other objects are placed there, motor vehicle electrics can be damaged when the boot floor is lowered or in the event of an accident. There is a risk of material damage. Only place the covers of the storage compartments at the sides in the free spaces under the boot floor.

Expanding

1. Lift the boot floor using the handle.



2. Lower the boot floor.



Reducing

To reduce the boot space again, proceed in reverse order.

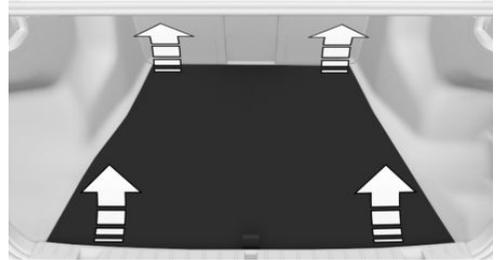
With emergency wheel: extending the boot

Principle

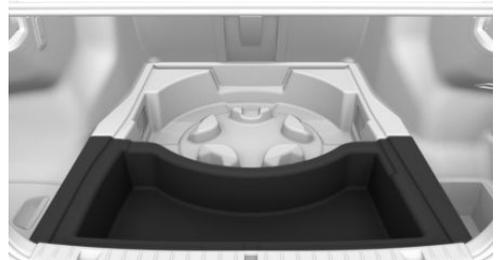
The emergency wheel and associated components can be removed temporarily to increase the boot space.

Taking out the emergency wheel and storage elements

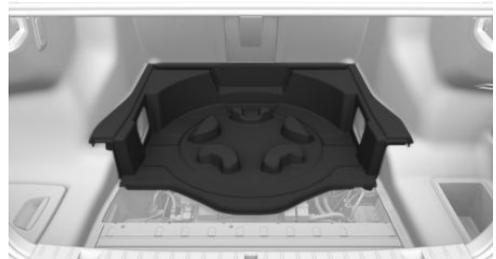
1. To remove the boot floor, pull it up directly behind the rear seat backrests.



2. Remove the emergency wheel, see page 369, and tool holder.
3. Release the lashing strap from the lashing eyes.
4. Remove the storage compartment.



5. Remove the storage tray.

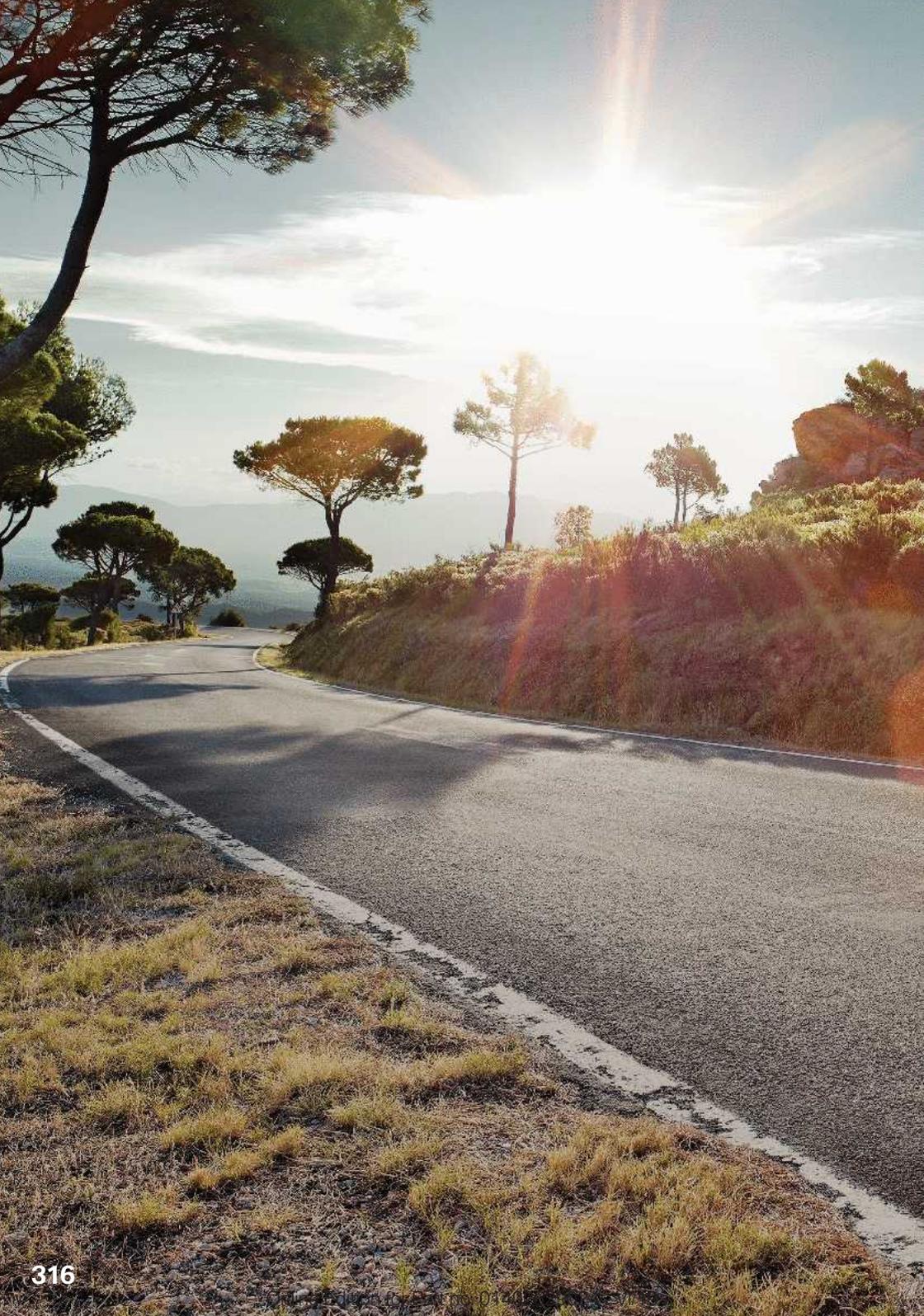


6. Insert the boot floor.



Inserting the emergency wheel and storage elements

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and storage elements.





① **DRIVING HINTS**

Driving precautions	318
Saving fuel	323

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Running in

General

Moving parts need to adjust to each other.

The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's lifetime and efficiency.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety note

 **WARNING**

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After new parts have been installed or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and intervene in good time if necessary. Please comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.

Engine, gearbox and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum engine revs and speed:

- ▷ With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Generally avoid kick-down and driving under full load.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake discs and pads only achieve their full effectiveness after approximately 500 km, 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

After fitting new parts

Please comply with the running-in procedures again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

General driving information

Closing the boot lid

Safety note

 **WARNING**

When open, the boot lid protrudes above the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or evasive manoeuvres, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also a danger of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. There

is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not drive with the boot lid open.

Driving with the boot lid open

If there is no alternative to driving with the tail-gate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Adjust the blower to a high setting.
- ▷ Maintain a moderate speed.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During vehicle operation, high temperatures may occur under the vehicle body, for example due to the exhaust system. If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Never remove the heat shields fitted here or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gas particle filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particle filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particle filter as necessary.

General

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- ▷ The engine may temporarily run a little roughly.
- ▷ A slightly higher engine speed may be required to achieve the usual power output.

- ▷ There may be a small amount of smoke from the exhaust, even after stopping the engine.
- ▷ Noise, for example caused by the radiator fan running, may be heard, even some minutes after stopping the engine.

It is normal for the radiator fan to keep running for several minutes, even after short trips.

Cleaning the exhaust gas particle filter while driving

Various driver profiles ensure that the exhaust gas particle filter is self-cleaning. If, in addition to the self-cleaning function, the exhaust gas particle filter needs to be actively cleaned while driving, a Check Control message is displayed.

Proceed as follows the next time you drive outside of built-up areas for around 30 minutes:

- ▷ Deactivate cruise Control systems.
- ▷ Take your foot off the accelerator repeatedly and allow the vehicle to roll in overrun mode, see page 324.
- ▷ If possible, drive at alternating speeds.

Radio signals

WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals originate from various transmitter systems, for example from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult a Service Partner should you experience any difficulties in this regard.

Mobile communication in the vehicle

WARNING

There is a possibility of reciprocal interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. Radiation is generated when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior if they are connected directly to an external antenna in order to eliminate reciprocal interference and to dissipate the radiation from vehicle's interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes properly applied.

Driving through water

General

Please comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▷ Only drive through still water.
- ▷ Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, 9.8 in.
- ▷ Drive through water at a walking speed of no more than 5 km/h, 3 mph.

Safety note

NOTE

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a risk of material damage. When driv-

ing through water, do not exceed the maximum water depth and speed specified above.

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with the Anti-lock Brake System ABS as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle remains steerable. Any obstacles can be avoided by performing steering movements as smoothly as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal and hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that the Anti-lock Brake System ABS is regulating.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional noise. However, functional noises have no effect on the efficiency and operational safety of the brakes.

Objects in the range of movement of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.

Wet roads

In damp weather, on gritted roads and in heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

Ensure that you do not obstruct other road users when doing so.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

This way, brake power is available immediately, whenever it is needed.

Downhill gradients

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and the braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Even slight continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.

⚠ WARNING

When idling, in the ECO PRO drive mode or with the drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or no longer available, for example the braking effect of the engine or power assistance for the braking force and steering. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive at idle speed, in the ECO PRO drive mode or with the drive-ready state switched off.

Corrosion of the brake discs

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a judder effect that generally cannot be eliminated.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

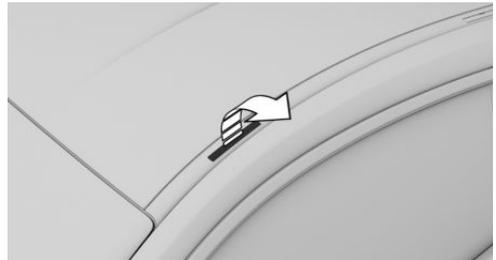
When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Roof rack

General

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

Roof strip with flaps



The mounting points are located on the roof strip above the doors.

Fold the cover outwards.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof rack.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.

Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted roof and axle loads or the permitted gross weight.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▷ The roof load must not be spread over a large area.
- ▷ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▷ Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.
- ▷ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the boot lid.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

Driving on a racing track

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved in driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not conceived for use in motor sports competitions.

Before and after driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Reducing fuel consumption

General

The vehicle possesses wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors.

A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce the burden on the environment.

Remove unnecessary loads

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove add-on parts after use

Remove unneeded roof racks after use.

Add-on parts on the vehicle interfere with its aerodynamic performance and increase fuel consumption.

Closing windows and the Glass Roof

An open Glass Roof or open window increase drag and consequently fuel consumption.

Tyres

General

Tyres can have differing effects on consumption. For example consumption can be affected by tyre size.

Check tyre inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and consequently fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Drive off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine up to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

Think ahead

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Pay attention to the shift point indicator in the vehicle, if fitted.

Make use of overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in overrun mode.

The high-voltage battery is charged.

Regular charging

Charge up the vehicle as often as possible at a charging facility. This reduces fuel consumption further by using electrical energy.

Switch off the engine if stopping for longer periods

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Switch off functions which are not currently required

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

The HYBRID ECO PRO and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving modes support the energy-saving use of comfort functions. In HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode, the comfort functions are automatically deactivated, either fully or partially. In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

Have maintenance work carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service Partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System.

Using the hybrid system efficiently

Principle

The hybrid system of the vehicle works automatically. By precautionary driving, the hybrid properties are used efficiently, in other words fuel consumption and energy recuperation are optimised.

Optimising energy recuperation

Types of energy recuperation

The energy recuperation is for charging the high-voltage battery. Energy recuperation is important for supplying the electrical components and therefore is a requirement for saving fuel.

When adaptive recuperation is activated, the system determines the energy recuperation level during coasting on the basis of the situation.

When adaptive recuperation is deactivated, there are three energy recuperation stages during coasting and braking:

- ▶ Slight energy recuperation: when rolling without pressing the brake.
- ▶ Moderate energy recuperation: slight deceleration by gently pressing the brake.
- ▶ Maximum energy recuperation: by pressing the brake somewhat more strongly, as long as the pointer is still moving in the middle range of the CHARGE display of the instrument cluster, see page 146.

Optimum energy recuperation

Driving with foresight and decelerating in due time help to optimise energy recuperation.

As soon as the display shows the maximum energy recuperation, the brake pedal can then be pressed more powerfully if the situation requires it.

Example drive situations for saving fuel

The hybrid system allows particularly efficient energy management in many traffic situations.

- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic:
The internal combustion engine is automatically started or stopped by the hybrid system.
- ▷ Driving at constant speed:
The electric motor temporarily relieves the internal combustion engine by automatically switching in.

Optimising fuel consumption

Charging the vehicle regularly

Regularly charge the vehicle fully at a suitable charging device. This reduces fuel consumption by using electrical energy.

The charge state of the high-voltage battery may be reduced by longer periods standing still, see page 401.

Avoiding using the internal combustion engine

Comply with the following notes to avoid using the internal combustion engine:

- ▷ Set the properties of the hybrid system to ELECTRIC or ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL using Driving Experience Control, see page 148.
- ▷ Comply with the ELECTRIC, see page 169, and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, see page 169, displays for electric driving in the instrument cluster.

Using the navigation system regularly

Use the navigation system even for routes that you are used to driving regularly. With active route guidance of the navigation system, the hybrid system uses the navigation data available. The section of the route ahead is analysed. The hybrid engine adapts to the specific sections of the route.

The function may be limited if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Driving modes for optimising consumption

Principle

The HYBRID ECO PRO and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving modes support a fuel-efficient driving style. For this purpose, comfort functions such as air conditioning and, where applicable, engine control are adjusted. In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

The engine is disconnected from the gearbox and the engine stopped in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed in HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode to assist with a fuel-efficient driving style.

General

The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO seat air conditioning.
- ▷ ECO PRO air conditioning.
- ▷ ECO PRO light and sight.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO: Route-ahead assistant.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO: Driving style analysis.

Overview



HYBRID HYBRID button

ELECTRIC ELECTRIC button

Activating HYBRID ECO PRO

1. **HYBRID** Press the button.
2. "HYBRID"
3. "ECO PRO"

Activating ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

1. **ELECTRIC** Press the button.
2. "ELECTRIC"
3. "INDIVIDUAL"

Configuring ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Experience Control

1. Activate ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL.
2. "Configure ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"

5. "Configure ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"

6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Enabling/disabling ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated / deactivated:

- ▷ "ECO PRO seat climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO light and sight"

The settings are saved for the current driver profile.

ECO PRO seat air conditioning

The output from the seat heating is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

The output from the seat heating and, if applicable, the seat ventilation is reduced when ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL is activated.

ECO PRO air conditioning

The air conditioning is adjusted for efficient consumption.

To achieve this, the set temperature is adjusted slightly and the interior is heated or cooled more slowly to reduce consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The power output of the exterior mirror and the rear window heating is reduced.

Depending on the equipment, the dynamic ECO light function is activated additionally.

Resetting settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the default setting:

"Reset"

HYBRID ECO PRO: Route-ahead assistant

Principle

The function helps to save fuel and supports an anticipatory driving style. Using the navigation data, certain sections of the route ahead can be detected early and information can be given.

General

The recognised sections of the route, such as built-up areas or bends ahead, for example, require a reduction in speed.

The alert is also given if the section of the route ahead cannot yet be detected when driving.

The alert is shown until the section of the route is reached.

If an alert is given, vehicle speed can then be reduced in an efficient way by removing your foot from the accelerator and allowing the vehicle to coast until the section of road is reached.

Operating requirements

- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode is activated.
- ▷ Navigation data is up to date.
- ▷ "Info on speed limits" and Speed Limit Assist are switched on, see page 255.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster



An alert regarding a section of the route ahead is given as a recommendation to use the coasting function.

An additional symbol shows the detected section of the route:

Symbol Section of the road in front



Speed limit or town entrance.



Junction or turn, exit from a fast road.



Corner.



Roundabout.

Display in the Head-Up Display



The advance notice alert can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

Display on the Control Display

An alert is shown in the driving style analysis display on the Control Display if there is a corresponding section of the route.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Using route-ahead assistant

A section of the route ahead is shown:

1. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.
2. Allow the vehicle to coast until you reach the section of road displayed.
3. Adjust the speed by braking as necessary.

System limits

The function is not available in the following situations:

- ▷ The speed is below 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ With Active Cruise Control.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

Adaptive recuperation supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style. Map data and various sensors analyse the current driving situation. During coasting, energy recuperation is adapted so that the distance from the vehicle in front can be kept constant, for example.

General

Based on the situation, the system decides whether and the extent to which energy is recovered through recuperation, or how the vehicle coasts. Depending on the extent of recuperation, the vehicle is decelerated at different rates during coasting.

Operating requirements

The system is active under the following conditions:

- ▷ Brake not pressed.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal not activated.
- ▷ Adaptive recuperation is activated.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode is activated.

System limits

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ During country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ With Active Cruise Control.

HYBRID ECO PRO: Driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps you to develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

To do this, the driving style is analysed. The evaluation is performed in various categories and is shown on the Control Display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

General

The current trip is evaluated.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are shown during the journey.

Adapting the driving style can increase the range of the vehicle.

Operating requirements

The function is available in HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the driving style analysis

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are shown in colour.

If the driving style is inefficient, on the other hand, a reduced number of bars are shown.



 **MOBILITY**

Charging vehicle	332
Refuelling	341
Wheels and tyres	344
Engine compartment	370
Operating fluids	373
Maintenance	380
Replacing parts	383
Help in case of a breakdown	388
General care	397

Charging vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General information on charging the vehicle

Principle

Vehicle can be recharged with various charging cables at charging stations or domestic socket outlets. Charging procedure is controlled and monitored fully automatically. The charging current intensity can be set using iDrive.

General

High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery serves as an energy store. The high-voltage battery can be charged during the journey by energy recuperation or from the electrical mains.

To optimally operate the high-voltage battery, charge the vehicle regularly and fully on a suitable charging fixture.

There are different variants of charging via the electrical mains, as follows.

- ▶ Charging using a domestic socket outlet.
- ▶ Charging using an AC charging station.

Charging using a domestic socket outlet is possible in a voltage range from 100 V to 240 V.

For optimum use of the energy of the power supply, charging at a charging station, for example BMW Wallbox is recommended.

Charging current

General

Charging current intensity is specified in amps.

The vehicle cannot automatically detect the maximum permitted charging current intensity of the power system when charging at a domestic socket outlet or a charging station.

Charging at a domestic socket outlet

Before the first charging on your own domestic socket outlet, and when charging on other domestic socket outlets, it is necessary for the permitted charging current intensity to be established, which can be done by an electrician, for example.

The charging current intensity for charging at a domestic socket outlet, see page 332, can be set in amperes.

When supplied, the charging current for charging at a domestic socket outlet is set to the lowest level.

One of several values in amps is printed on the supplied Mode 2 charging cable, depending on the country variant. This amp value is the limit observed by the vehicle when the charging current is set to the highest level. Depending on the charging cable, the charging current intensity may vary when lower levels are set.

Setting the charging current for charging via charging cable mode 2

Depending on the electrical mains, the vehicle must be charged with different levels of charging

current intensity. The charging current limit is set to the lowest level as standard.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Standard charging"
6. "Current limit"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved. When charging the charging location, change the setting accordingly.

For foreign domestic sockets, set the charging current intensity to the lowest level.

The duration of charging changes according to the charging current setting.

Keeping charge state

If it is necessary to save a certain electric range for a later point in the journey, for example, the BATTERY CONTROL function can maintain or raise the current charge state of the high-voltage battery.

Safety notes

WARNING

Working with electric current incorrectly can cause an electric shock due to high voltages or powerful current. There is a risk of fire or fatal injury. Follow the general safety regulations when working with electric current.

WARNING

An incorrectly and wrongly configured charging fixture at the charging location can cause damage to the vehicle and overload the power system at the charging location. There is a risk of fire and fatal injury.

Before the first charging process, have the following components of your own charging fixture at the charging location checked by an electrician:

- ▷ Charging cable.
- ▷ Charging station.
- ▷ Domestic socket outlet and connected circuits.

WARNING

Damaged or worn charging fixtures, for example worn contacts, can heat up. There is a risk of fire. Only use a charging fixture that is in perfect condition.

WARNING

If no sufficient safety distance is maintained from inflammable materials, filling up and charging at the same time can lead to a danger of fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not fill up and charge the vehicle at the same time.

WARNING

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is high voltage at the charging connection. There is a danger of injury or even death. Have work on the charging connection, for example cleaning, performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging cable

General

For charging the vehicle, use a Mode 2 charging cable, an AC rapid charging cable or a fixed cable of a charging station.

Depending on the country, different charging cables can be required.

It may be possible to make settings on the charging cable. Do not change the default setting on the charging cable.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Incompatible charging cables or unsuitable charging stations can heat up and cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of fire. For charging, use charging cables or charging stations that have been classified as suitable for the corresponding type of vehicle.

Information on suitable charging cables can be asked for at the Service Partner of the manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the charging cable can prevent the charging process and lead to damage, for example cable fire. There is a risk of fire. Only use the charging cable for charging the vehicle and do not extend it with a cable or adapter.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged charging cables can heat up or cause an electric shock. There is a risk of fire or injury. Only use undamaged charging cables.

Mode 2 charging cable

It is permissible to perform charging from domestic socket outlets with a protective earth using the Mode 2 charging cable. Alternating current is used to charge on a power connection to a domestic socket outlet.

When using the Mode 2 charging cable, the efficiency values may differ from those on the energy label.

The Mode 2 charging cable is also referred to as a standard charging cable.

AC quick charging cable

The AC rapid charging cable enables fast charging at sockets of designated AC charging stations through a special plug. Alternating current is used to charge at labelled AC charging stations. The charging process can be completed faster than with domestic socket outlets.

A charging current of up to maximum 16 A is possible.

If necessary, the charging cable is permanently installed on the charging station.

The AC rapid charging cable is also referred to as a mode 3 charging cable.

Storage



The Mode 2 charging cable is located in a bag in the boot.

Put the charging cable back in its bag after use. Attach the bag to the lashing eye provided.

If required, store charging cable with attached plug cover to avoid moisture in the charging cable plug.

Connecting

Charge point flap



The charge point flap is located on the left of the vehicle.

Keep charge point flap clean and clear.

Keep the charge point flap closed when the charge point is not being used.

Connecting a charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state and unlock the vehicle. Apply parking brake if necessary.

1. To open the charge point flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The charge point flap opens.



2. Connect the Mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the AC rapid charging cable to the port on the AC charging station.
3. Place the charging cable plug into the charge point and push in as far as the stop.

Removing

During the charging process, the charging cable is automatically locked. Unlock the charging cable before removing.

Before pulling off, clean the area between the charge point flap and charging connection, for example to remove snow.

1. Press the release button on the vehicle key or operate the door handle.
Charging cable is unlocked for a short time.
2. Hold the charging cable by the gripping areas.
3. Remove charging cable from the charge point, arrow.



4. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
5. If necessary, disconnect the Mode 2 charging cable from the domestic socket outlet or the AC rapid charging cable from the port on the AC charging station.
6. Store charging cable.
Plug in a fixed charging cable at a charging station in the place provided for it.

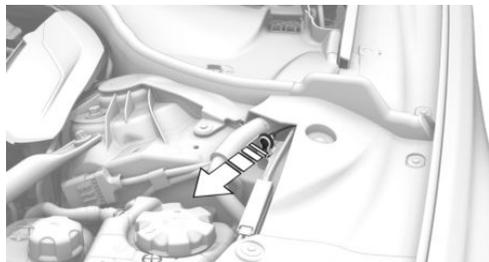
Emergency unlocking

The charging cable is locked when the vehicle is locked and during the charging process.

Charging cable can be unlocked manually if there is electrical defect.

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Release the knob from the holder.
3.  Pull the knob.

Charge cable is manually unlocked.



4. Disconnecting charging cable, see page 335.

After the charging cable has been unlocked in an emergency, have the locking system of the charging connection checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the power system connection can lead to damage, for example cable fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Only use the charging cable for charging the vehicle and do not extend it with a cable or adapter.

⚠ WARNING

If the charging current intensity is set incorrectly, the power system of the domestic socket can be overloaded and overheat. There is a risk of fire. Before charging at domestic socket outlets, adapt the charging current intensity to the power system. Set to the lowest level if the power system is unknown.

Starting charging

1. Engage the selector lever in position P. Apply parking brake if necessary.
2. Planning to charge, see page 337.
3. Switch off drive-ready state.
4. If necessary, connect the Mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the AC rapid charging cable to the port on the AC charging station.
5. Open charge point flap.
6. Connect charging cable to the vehicle, see page 335.
7. Lock vehicle as appropriate.

The charging cable is automatically locked if all the general conditions are complied with, for example the AC charging station has authorised the charging. Charging can only be started if the charging cable is locked. If the charging cable is not locked, pull off the charging cable if it is not already disconnected, and reconnect it.

At high temperatures, high-voltage battery is first cooled. Charging procedure can start with delay. If the high-voltage battery is discharged, it might be that it is not possible to cool the high-voltage battery. The charging process cannot be started.

If the Mode 2 charging cable is exposed to high temperatures and direct sunlight, this may interrupt the charging process. Charging resumes automatically.

The charging process may take longer at particularly low or high temperatures.

Display of charge state

Indicator lamp on the charge point

The charging status for charging with a charging cable is indicated by the charging socket indicator lamp.



Charge state

Light	Charge state
White	Charging table can be connected or removed.
Flashes yellow	Charging process is being prepared.
Blue	Charging process paused.
Flashes blue	Charging process active.
Flashes red	Fault in charging process.
Green	Charging process completed.

The indicator lamp is no longer illuminated after some time when the vehicle is locked.

The blue indicator lamp flashes continuously while the vehicle is unlocked. The other indicator lamps are extinguished after some time.

To check the charge state, press the  button on the vehicle key. The charge state is shown on the indicator lamp. The vehicle may be locked.

Additional messages about the charging status can be displayed in the instrument cluster, on the BMW display key or via the BMW Connected app on a smartphone.

Planning to charge

General

Charging can be adapted to boundary conditions, for example, electricity costs, available electricity source or low ambient temperature.

The vehicle controls the charging so that the charging is completed if possible by a departure time. The departure time must be set to do this, see page 339.

The following charge modes are available:

- ▷ Charge immediately.
- ▷ Charge in the time window.
- ▷ Intelligent charging.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, charges can be made using iDrive. Settings for standing air conditioning and loading process are accepted for planned departure times too.

Intelligent charging can be ignored for the next charging process.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. "Charge immediately once"

Setting the charging mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. "Charging mode:"
4. Select the desired settings:
 - ▷ "Charge immediately": charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected.
 - ▷ "Charging in time slot": if a departure time is set, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.
 - ▷ "Intelligent charging": intelligent charging enables the charging process to be adapted dynamically to ambient conditions via the Internet.

Charge in the time window

General

During the charging process, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.

To set a time window for favourable charging, a departure time must be set.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive.

Setting the time window for favourable charging

If a departure time is set, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Charging time slot"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "From.": set start of tariff.
 - ▷ "Until.": set end of tariff.

Intelligent charging enables the time window to be set automatically for certain locations.

The vehicle can also start the charging process before the selected time window begins or end it after the selected time window finishes. The starting point of the charging process is adjusted so the vehicle can be fully charged and, if applicable, its climate controlled right up to the departure time.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive.

The set time window can be ignored for the next charging process: "Charge immediately once"

Intelligent charging

Principle

Intelligent charging enables the charging process to be adapted dynamically to ambient conditions via the Internet, for example the availability of electricity generated by solar panels or electricity tariffs with variable times. Intelligent charging is part of BMW's Digital Charging Service.

More information about the Digital Charging Service is available on the Internet:

<https://charging.bmwgroup.com>

General

In intelligent charging, no time is displayed in the instrument cluster for the end of charging.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive.

Intelligent charging can be ignored for the next charging process.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. "Charge immediately once"

Operating requirements

- ▷ Account in the BMW charging portal.
- ▷ Service for intelligent charging subscribed to.
- ▷ A suitable Wallbox.
- ▷ Departure time set, see page 339.
- ▷ Charging current intensity set to the highest level.

Configuring BMW charging service

The BMW charging service can be configured at the following points:

- ▷ BMW Remote App on a smartphone.
- ▷ BMW charging portal on the Internet.

Stopping charging

Charging is interrupted when the vehicle is unlocked and automatically continued again after a short time when it is locked.

The charging process can be terminated at any time by removing the charging cable, and resumed at a later point by connecting the charging cable. For example, so that other consumers can use the power connection in the meantime or to avoid high power output levels simultaneously from a number of consumers.

Disconnecting charging cable, see page 335.

Resuming charging

If charging is interrupted, for example, by unlocking the vehicle or due to a temporary power failure, charging is automatically continued after the interruption.

Ending charging

1. Remove charging cable from the vehicle, see page 335.
2. Store charging cable if necessary.
3. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
4. Lock vehicle as appropriate.

Displays in the instrument cluster

When the standby state is switched on, the charge state indicator, see page 167, shows the charge state of the high-voltage battery in the instrument cluster. If all bars are filled in, the high-voltage battery is completely charged.

Even if no bar is filled in, the high-voltage battery is always under high voltage.

The charge screen, see page 167, displays information about the charging process.

Display Meaning



Plug blue: charging process active or completed.

White plug: charging procedure interrupted.



Time for end of charging or preset departure time.



Charge continuation bar.



Display in blue: charged electrical range.

Display Meaning



Departure time set.



Air conditioning activated for departure time.



Flashing: ventilation active.



Flashing: heating active.



Flashing: cooling active.

Departure time

Principle

For optimum range and air conditioning, the departure time can be set before stopping the vehicle.

General

With a set departure time, the vehicle is preheated or precooled if climate control is set.

The following settings for departure time are possible:

- ▷ Air conditioning for departure time.
- ▷ Planning up to three regular departure times.
- ▷ Planning a one-time departure time.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive. Settings for acclimatisation and loading process are accepted for planned departure times too.

Air conditioning for departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Precond. departure"

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. Set the time and day of the week.

Up to three regular departure times can be set and a one-time departure time can be set.

Activating the departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. "Activate departure"

Up to three regular departure times or a one-time departure time can be activated.

The set departure time is deactivated if the departure time is not observed three times in succession.

Air conditioning

General

The following settings for air conditioning the vehicle are possible:

- ▷ Activate standard air conditioning immediately, see page [299](#).

With standing air conditioning activated and no charging cable connected, the range is reduced.

- ▷ Planned air conditioning at the set departure time, see page [299](#).

Discharged high-voltage and vehicle battery

General

As well as high-voltage battery the vehicle has a 12 Volt vehicle battery which is required to operate the on-board electronics.

If the internal combustion is started when the high-voltage battery is discharged, the air conditioning may be limited.

It is not possible to operate the vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery.

Making the vehicle operable

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the internal combustion engine can be started using two jump leads from another vehicle's battery, see Starting assistance, see page [393](#).

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Notes when refuelling

General

Before refuelling, observe the notes on fuel quality, see page 373.

At least 10 litres, 3 gal of fuel should be refuelled so as to guarantee all engine functions even in unfavourable situations such as a very steep vehicle inclination.

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- ▶ The supply of fuel is stopped too soon.
- ▶ Fuel vapour recovery is less effective.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

Safety notes

WARNING

If no sufficient safety distance is maintained from inflammable materials, filling up and charging at the same time can lead to a danger of fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not fill up and charge the vehicle at the same time.

NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

NOTE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with paintwork, it can damage it. This pollutes the environment. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid overfilling.

Tank aeration

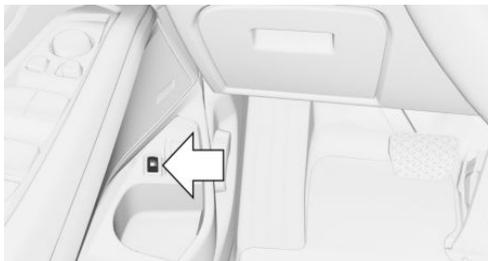
Principle

The vehicle is equipped with a special fuel tank. The fuel tank is designed for special requirements arising from hybrid operation of the vehicle, in other words, alternating drive with internal combustion engine or electric motor.

General

An overpressure may form in the fuel tank as a result of petrol vapours which is dissipated before fuel tank cap is opened.

Overview



The button is located in the driver's door storage compartment.

Aerating tank

1. Switch off drive-ready state.

2. Press  button to start aerating.

The tank aeration status is shown in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, the tank aeration may take several minutes.

When the tank aeration has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel filler flap is released for opening.

3. Open fuel filler flap.

If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank aeration, press the button again.

If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after the button has been pressed again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually, see page 343.

Fuel tank cap

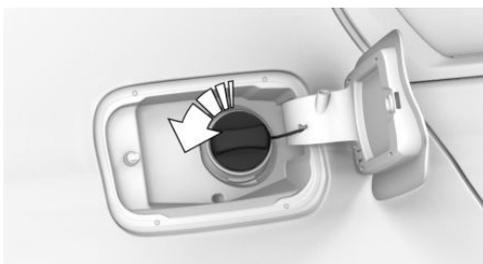
Opening

Before opening allow air to escape from tank, see page 341.

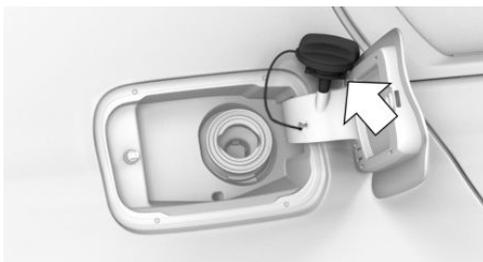
1. To open the fuel filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. It will then not be possible to close the cap properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the retaining strap

does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency release

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for example if there is an electrical fault.

The unlocking mechanism is in the boot.

1. Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.



2. Pull the green tag with the fuel pump symbol. Fuel filler flap is unlocked without making any noise.
3. To open the fuel filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.
4. Carefully open the fuel tank cap. An overpressure can be formed in the fuel tank due to petrol vapours.
5. Refuel the vehicle in the usual way. It is possible for residual pressure to make the refuelling procedure difficult, for example because the filler nozzle cuts out frequently.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

A tyre's condition and inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ Lifetime of the tyre.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety note

WARNING

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Handling characteristics, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a risk of accident. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the door pillar



The tyre inflation pressures are shown on the door pillar of the driver's door.

The tyre inflation pressure data is valid for the tyre sizes and recommended tyre makes which have been classified by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

If the tyre's speed code cannot be found, then the tyre inflation pressure for the corresponding tyre size applies.

The tyre inflation pressures stated for the respective load conditions apply depending on the vehicle's actual load condition. Example: for a partially loaded vehicle, the optimum tyre inflation pressure is the one stated for a partially loaded vehicle.

When the vehicle is partially loaded, the lowest possible fuel consumption can be achieved with the ECO tyre inflation pressure.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For Australia/New Zealand

WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications from your tyre dealer.

On the Control Display

The current tyre inflation pressure values and the specified tyre inflation pressure values for the mounted tyres can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the fitted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is shown on each tyre.

The specified tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the Control Display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

Tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Inflating devices can display a pressure that may be up to 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the door pillar

The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the tyre inflation pressure sign on the door pillar only relate to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- ▶ If the vehicle has been driven a distance of no more than 2 km, 1.25 miles.
- ▶ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

Regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

1. Determine the specified tyre inflation pressures for the tyres when fitted to the vehicle.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the Control Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the specified tyre pressure value.
5. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

For Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM:

The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been performed.

For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the Control Display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.

Speed code

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 160 km/h, 100 mph
R	up to 170 km/h/106 mph
S	up to 180 km/h/112 mph
T	up to 190 km/h/118 mph
H	up to 210 km/h/131 mph
F	up to 240 km/h/150 mph
W	up to 270 km/h/167 mph
Y	up to 300 km/h/186 mph

Tyre tread

Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in, otherwise there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, 0.16 in, otherwise the vehicle's suitability for winter use is restricted.

Minimum tread depth



Wear displays are distributed across the tyre circumference and have the legally prescribed minimum height of 1.6 mm, 0.06 in.

The positions of the wear displays are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tyre damage

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

Vehicle behaviour that may indicate tyre damage or other faults:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tyre or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Driving over kerbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Insufficient tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ Overloading the vehicle.
- ▷ Incorrect tyre storage.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced, which in turn could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. If you suspect tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres. Have them replaced.

WARNING

Tyres can become damaged by running over obstacles, for example kerbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a danger of accidents and damage to property. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Age of tyres

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture of the tyre is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Date of manufacture
DOT ... 2119	21st week of 2019

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel/tyre combination

General

Information on the correct wheel/tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. For example they could come into contact with the bodywork on account of their dimensional tolerances, despite having the same nominal size. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

WARNING

Mounted steel wheels can lead to technical problems, for example wheel studs may work loose or brake discs may be damaged. There is a risk of accident. Do not install steel wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect wheel/tyre combinations impair the vehicle's handling characteristics and interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as the Anti-lock Brake System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the vehicle concerned. After a tyre has been damaged, refit the same wheel/tyre combination as the original.

Recommended makes of tyre

Certain makes of tyre are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for each tyre size. The tyre brands can be identified by a star on the side wall of the tyre.

New tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Retreaded tyres**⚠ WARNING**

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced with increasing age. There is a risk of accident. Do not use retreaded tyres.

The vehicle manufacturer advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Winter tyres**General**

Winter tyres are recommended if driving in winter conditions.

Although tyres known as all-season tyres with an M+S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of maximum speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, an information label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The label is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and do not exceed the respectively permitted maximum speed.

Replacing run-flat tyres

For your own safety, only use run-flat tyres.

There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Swapping over front and rear wheels

WARNING

Swapping over of wheels between axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles may cause tyre damage and damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not swap over wheels between axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles.

Different tyre tread wear patterns occur on the wheels of the front and rear axles, depending on the individual operating conditions. To achieve even wear, the tyres can be swapped over in pairs between the axles. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After swapping over, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust if necessary.

Storing tyres

Tyre inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.

Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.

Do not leave tyres in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Run-flat tyres

Principle

In the event of a complete loss of tyre inflation pressure, run-flat tyres enable you to continue driving, with certain restrictions.

General

The wheels are fitted with tyres which are self-supporting to a limited degree. They may also have special rims.

The reinforced side wall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree even if tyre inflation pressure has been lost.

Observe the notes on continuing to drive with a flat tyre.

Safety note

WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Label



The tyres are identified on the tyre's side wall by RSC Runflat System Component.

Remedying flat tyres

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Mobility System

Principle

With the Mobility System, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. For this purpose, liquid sealant is pumped into the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

General

- ▷ Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility System which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- ▷ Applying the Mobility System can be ineffective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.
- ▷ Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- ▷ Foreign bodies that have penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.

- ▷ Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Using sealants can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

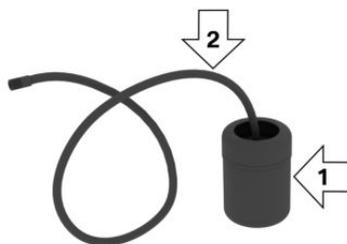
Overview

Storage



The Mobility System is located in a bag in the left storage compartment of the boot. To remove it, loosen the tensioning strap.

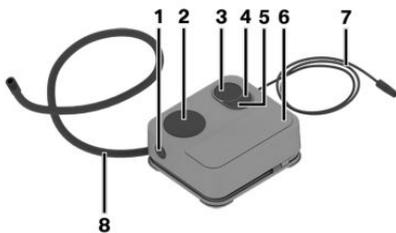
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



- 1 Unlocking sealant container
- 2 Sealant container holder
- 3 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 4 Reduce tyre inflation pressure button
- 5 On/Off button
- 6 Compressor
- 7 Plug/cable for socket
- 8 Connecting hose

Safety measures

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.
- ▶ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▶ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▶ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Filling with sealing compound

Safety notes

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTE

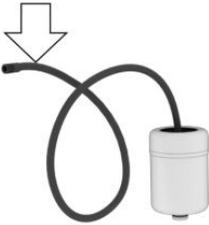
The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a risk of material damage. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.

Filling

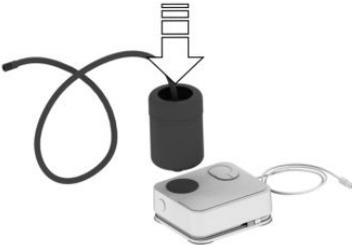
1. Shake the sealant container.



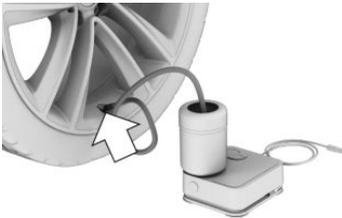
2. Pull filler hose completely from the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Push the sealant container into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it audibly engages.



4. Screw the filler hose of the sealant container onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



5. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior while the compressor is switched off.



6. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.



Let the compressor run for approximately 10 minutes to fill the sealing compound and achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.0 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

Checking and adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Read off the tyre inflation pressure as shown on the tyre pressure indicator.

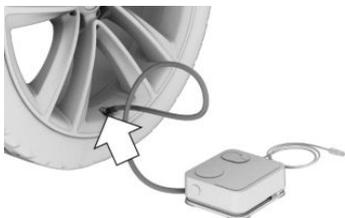
To be able to continue the journey, a tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and storing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filler hose of the sealant container from the tyre valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Pack and store the sealant container to avoid soiling the boot.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

1. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, 400 inches, to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
3. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



4. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



5. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is not reached, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or a qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
7. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

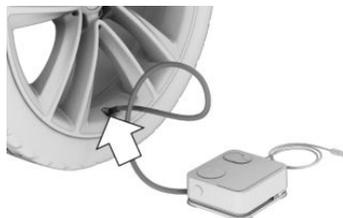
1. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
2. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 mi to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Adjusting

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



3. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



4. Correct tyre inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
 - ▶ To increase tyre inflation pressure: switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.
 - ▶ To reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
6. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Resuming with journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA, see page 361.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 355.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.

Snow chains

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If snow chains are fitted to unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Only fit snow chains on tyres that the manufacturer has approved as being suitable for snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently tensioned snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Ensure that snow chains are always adequately tensioned. Re-tension them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic and categorised as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Use

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the rear wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▶ 225/50 R17.
- ▶ 225/45 R18.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator RPA with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains fitted, activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC briefly as required in order to optimise traction.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Principle

The system monitors the tyre inflation pressure in the four fitted tyres. The system warns if the tyre inflation pressure in one or more tyres has fallen.

General

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre temperature.

The system detects the fitted tyres automatically. The system shows the preset specified pressures on the Control Display and compares them to the current tyre inflation pressures.

If tyres are fitted which are not listed on the tyre inflation pressure labels in the vehicle, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as the specified values.

When operating the system, please also comply with the other information and notes in the Tyre inflation pressure chapter, see page 344.

Safety note

WARNING

The display showing the specified tyre inflation pressures does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. If incorrect data has been entered into the tyre settings, the specified tyre inflation pressures will also be incorrect. As a result, reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure can no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Make sure that the tyre sizes of the fitted tyres are displayed correctly and that they match the specifications on the tyres and in the tyre inflation pressure information.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▶ After each tyre or wheel change, the system has detected the fitted tyres, updated the relevant information and, after a short journey, shown it on the Control Display.
- If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, enter the specifications for the fitted tyres in the tyre settings.
- ▶ RDC only becomes active after a journey of several minutes:
 - ▶ After a tyre or wheel change.
 - ▶ Reset, in the case of tyres with special approval.
 - ▶ After changing the tyre setting.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval:
 - ▶ After every tyre or wheel change, a reset must be carried out when the tyre inflation pressure is correct.
 - ▶ A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
- ▶ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Tyre settings

General

If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, the specifications for the fitted tyres can be entered in the tyre settings.

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle or directly on the tyres.

The tyre data does not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the tyre data last entered for each type is saved. This means that the settings can be retrieved again after a tyre or wheel change.

Adjusting the settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (⚠) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tyre settings"
5. "Tyre selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tyre type"
 - ▷ "Summer tyres"
 - ▷ "Winter/all-season"
8. Select the type of tyre fitted on the rear axle:
 - ▷ Tyre size, for example 245/45 R18 96 Y.
 - ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: "Other tyre".

See the Performing a reset section for how to proceed.
9. Select the load status of the vehicle if a tyre size has been selected.
10. "Save tyre settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the system, for example whether the system is active, can be shown on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (⚠) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can vary depending on vehicle operation or outside temperature.

Current tyre temperature

Depending on the model, the current tyre temperatures are shown.

The current tyre temperatures can change as a result of vehicle operation or the outside temperature.

Specified pressure

The specified pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The specified pressure takes account of the temperature effects caused by vehicle operation and the outside temperature. Regardless of the weather conditions, tyre temperatures and length of journey, the appropriate specified pressure is always displayed.

The displayed specified pressure may vary and differ from the value stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tyre inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed specified pressures.

The specified pressure is adjusted immediately if the load status is changed in the tyre settings.

Tyre statuses

General

The status of the system and tyres is indicated by the wheel colour and message on the Control Display.

If applicable, existing messages are not deleted if the displayed specified pressure is not reached on correction of the tyre inflation pressure.

All wheels green

- ▶ The system is active and is using the displayed specified pressures for the warning.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system is active and is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

One to four wheels yellow

There is a flat tyre or major loss of tyre inflation pressure in the tyres shown.

Wheels grey

Tyre pressure losses might not be detected.

Possible causes:

- ▶ Malfunction.
- ▶ The tyre inflation pressure is being measured, after confirmation of the tyre settings.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval: a system reset is being performed.

Tyres with special approval: performing a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

4. Make sure that the correct tyre settings, see page 356, have been made.
5. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
6. Reset the tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the following appears on the display: "Resetting Tyre Pressure Monitor...".

After driving for several minutes, the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as the specified tyre inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and the following appears: "Tyre Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures."

You can interrupt your journey at any time. The reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added or there was a natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If the tyre inflation pressure is insufficient

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.
The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 349, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.
3. Follow the description of what to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 360.

Messages: in the case of tyres with special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of

stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Sym- bol	Possible cause
-------------	----------------



The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air added.

The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been performed.

The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset.

No reset has been performed on the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a reset of the system.

If the tyre inflation pressure is insufficient

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
--------	----------------



There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

No reset has been performed on the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a reset of the system.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
--------	----------------



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

No reset has been performed on the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 349, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

3. Follow the description of what to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 360.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

In the case of tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the TPM might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

If no tyre damage can be found, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of sealant, for example a flat tyre kit, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tyres

Safety note

WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics.

There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, the nature of the road surface, outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter or, if a more careful driving style is adopted, may also be longer.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and used under favourable conditions, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and may result in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▶ Longer braking distances.
- ▶ Different self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or pot-holes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which might lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but instead contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The tyre inflation pressure increases as the tyre temperature increases, for example during driving or due to exposure to sunlight.

Tyre inflation pressure decreases if the tyre temperature drops.

Through this behaviour, a warning may be triggered if there are major temperature drops, due to the given warning limits.

After a temperature-related warning, the specified pressures are displayed again on the Control Display after driving a short distance.

Sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure

No warning can be given in the event of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre is reported in spite of the correct tyre pressure.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check

Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses may not be detected.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted, for example emergency wheel: have the wheels checked if necessary.
- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Runflat indicator RPA

Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre inflation pressure by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

If a tyre loses inflation pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. The discrepancy will be detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, an initialisation must be carried out when the tyre inflation pressures are correct.
- ▷ An initialisation must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.

Status display

It is possible to display the current status of the runflat indicator, for example to check whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- ▶ After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- ▶ After a tyre or wheel change.

Initialising

On initialisation, the current tyre pressures are saved as a reference for detection of a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialisation: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

Initialisation is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated if necessary as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

Safety note

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

Flat tyre message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.



Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 349, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tyres

Safety note

WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics.

There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, the nature of the road surface, outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter or, if a more careful driving style is adopted, may also be longer.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and used under favourable conditions, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and may result in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▶ Longer braking distances.
- ▶ Different self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or pot-holes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which might lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but instead contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ A natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time is not detected. Consequently, check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- ▷ No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.
- ▷ If the system has not been initialised.
- ▷ When driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- ▷ Dynamic driving style: drive wheels slipping, high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

For run-flat tyres or when using a flat tyre kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately if tyre inflation pressure is lost due to a flat tyre.

If required, the tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

DANGER

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a danger of injury or even

death. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only use the jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare wheel in the event of a flat tyre.

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a danger of injury. Perform the wheel change on a level, firm and non-slip surface if at all possible.

WARNING

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.

⚠ WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. Have any wheel that is jammed removed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The jack can damage the base of the vehicle if operated incorrectly, thereby exposing high-voltage components. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse. Ensure that no parts of the underbody trim are damaged.

⚠ Vehicle jack: Australian/New Zealand standard AS/NZS 2693

2007 – "Vehicle jacks" contains the following warning note, which BMW hereby adopts: "... no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack".

The jack supplied with your vehicle should not be used for any purpose other than wheel changing and should never be used in conjunction with a vehicle support stand. Raising the

vehicle for the purpose of inspection should only be performed in a controlled workshop environment on a hoist by trained personnel.

The following warning instructions from standard AS/NZS 2693:2007 are repeated here: the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible. It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

The jack of your BMW is maintenance-free.

Please observe the information marked on the jack.

Protecting the vehicle against rolling

General

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel directly opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill slope



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill slope, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles in the opposite direction to the direction of roll.

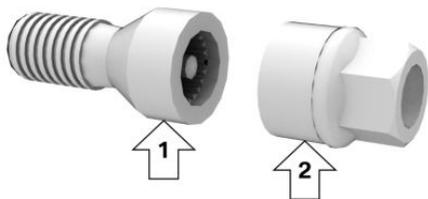
Thiefproof wheel studs

Principle

The wheel locking bolts have a special coding. The bolts can only be released with the adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the thiefproof wheel studs can be found in the on-board tool kit or in an oddments tray in the on-board tool kit.



- ▷ Wheel stud, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew the wheel stud.

3. After unscrewing the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

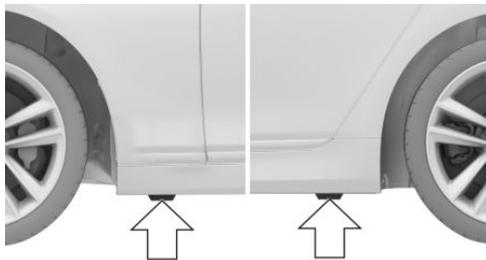
Screwing on

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the wheel stud.
2. Screw on the wheel stud. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. After screwing on the wheel stud, remove the adapter again and stow it.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel out of the vehicle.
- ▷ If applicable, set up warning triangle or flashing light at the correct distance.
- ▷ Additionally protect the vehicle against rolling away.
- ▷ Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.

Jacking points



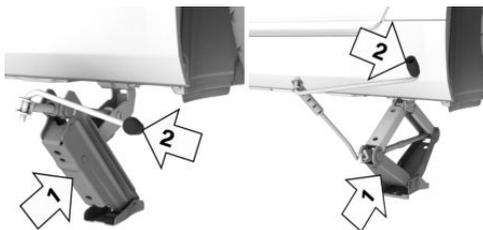
The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

Raising vehicle

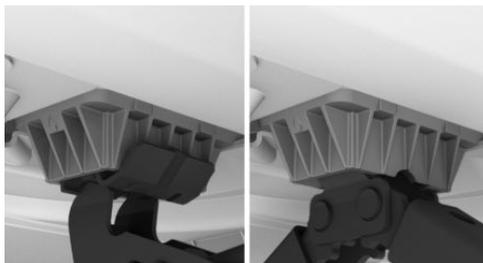
WARNING

Your hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a danger of injury. Keep your hands in the described position when using the jack, and do not change this position.

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



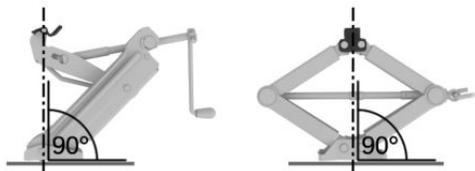
2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



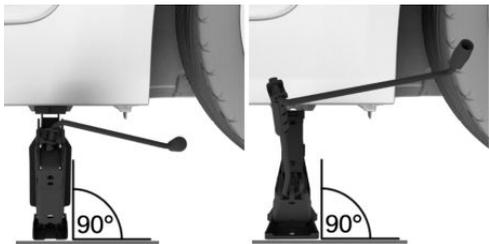
3. Turn the jack crank or lever clockwise to extend the jack.



- Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank or lever with one hand.
- Make sure that the base of the vehicle jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles underneath the jacking point.



- Make sure that the base of the jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles below the jacking point.



- Raise by cranking until the jack is supported on the ground with its entire surface and the wheel in question is at most 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

Only fit one emergency wheel at most, as required.

- Unscrew the wheel studs.
- Remove the wheel.
- Put on the new wheel or emergency wheel and tighten at least two wheel studs crosswise until finger-tight.

If non-original light alloy wheels not from the vehicle manufacturer are fitted, the wheel

studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.

- Tighten the remaining wheel studs until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel studs crosswise.
- Turn the jack crank anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
- Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After changing the wheel

- Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
- Stow the faulty wheel in the boot, if necessary.

Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the boot floor.

- Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
- Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA. Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.
- Check the tight fit of the wheel studs using a calibrated torque wrench.
- Drive to the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Emergency wheel

Principle

In case of a flat tyre, the emergency wheel can be used as a replacement for the defective tyre. The emergency wheel is intended for short-term use until the defective wheel has been replaced.

General

Only fit one emergency wheel at most.

Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

Safety note

WARNING

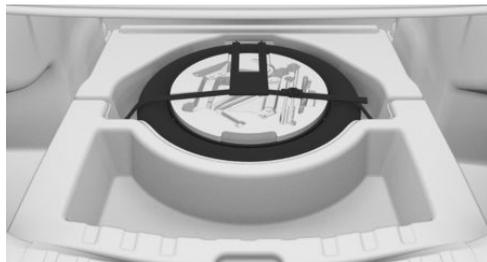
The emergency wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, the driving properties may change, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

3. Remove the tool holder from the emergency wheel.
4. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage tray, arrow 2.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Pull the boot floor up.
2. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
3. Tie the lashing strap. Make sure that it is seated correctly and firmly.
4. Push the boot floor downwards.

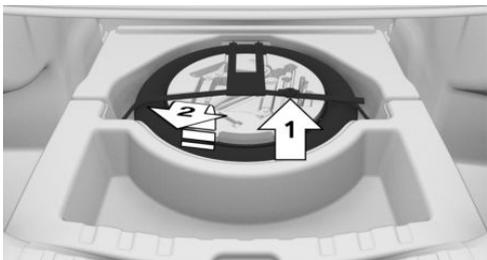
Overview



The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the boot under the floor.

Removing emergency wheel

1. Pull the boot floor up.
2. Loosen the lashing strap at the buckle, arrow 1, but do not release it completely.



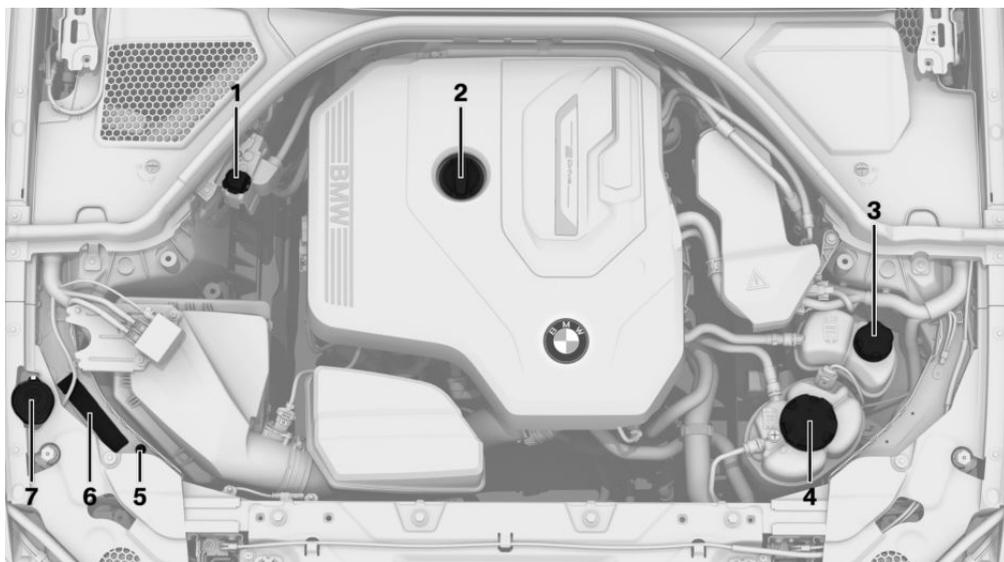
Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview



- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Starting assistance, positive battery terminal | 5 Starting assistance, negative battery terminal |
| 2 Oil filler neck | 6 Vehicle identification number |
| 3 Additional coolant tank cooling | 7 Filler neck for washing fluid |
| 4 Engine coolant tank | |

Bonnet

Safety notes

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and poses a safety risk. There is a danger of accidents or damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a danger of injury. Do not reach into an area where there are moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

The bonnet has protruding parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is kept clear.

NOTE

Wipers that are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreen.

NOTE

When closing, the bonnet must lock into place on both sides. Applying additional pressure can damage the bonnet. There is a risk of material damage. Open the bonnet again and close it firmly. Avoid applying additional pressure.

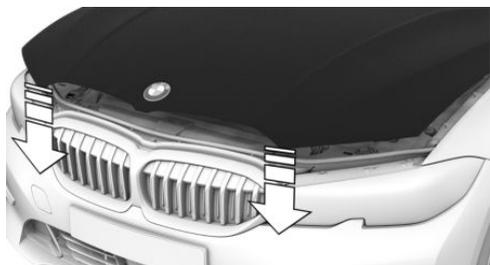
Opening

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.
The bonnet is released.



2. After releasing the lever, pull the lever again, arrow 2.
The bonnet is opened.
3. Watch out for any protruding parts of the bonnet.

Closing



Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of approximately 50 cm, 20 in.

The bonnet must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Fuel quality

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is sold in winter helps with cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphurfree or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.



The engine has knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

Safety notes

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the following fuel or additives with petrol engines:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling with the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.

NOTE

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can adversely affect engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with petrol below the specified minimum quality.

Petrol grade

The engine is designed to run on petrol to DIN EN 228.

Super, RON 95.

Use this fuel to achieve the nominal performance and consumption figures.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol, RON 91.

**BMW recommends
Shell Quality Fuels** 

Engine oil

General

Engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption may increase due to the following, for example:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ Running in the engine.
- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades categorised as unsuitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level.

Safety notes

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement uses two measuring methods:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, for example taking corners at high speed, perform a detailed measurement at regular intervals.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically during the journey and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to measure the oil level. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and is shown on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During measurement, the idle speed is increased slightly.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▶ In drive-ready state.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.
- ▶ The internal combustion engine is at operating temperature.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil level measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Adding engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the Control Display.

Only replenish with suitable types of engine oil.

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Safety notes

WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or even death. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment, see page 370.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the bonnet, see page 371.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

Engine oil grades for topping up**General**

Engine oil quality is a crucial factor determining the lifetime of the engine.

Only replenish with the types of engine oil that are listed.

Some engine oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Safety notes**NOTE**

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTE

Using the wrong engine oil can result in engine malfunctions and damage. There is a risk of material damage. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that the engine oil corresponds to the oil specification.

Suitable engine oil grades

Replenish with engine oils with the following oil specifications.

Oil specification

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil grades

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Oil specification

ACEA C2.

ACEA C3.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil belongs to one of the following viscosity classes:

Viscosity classes

SAE 0W-20.

SAE 5W-20.

SAE 0W-30.

SAE 5W-30.

SAE 0W-40.

SAE 5W-40.

Viscosity classes with a high viscosity grade can increase fuel consumption.

Further information on suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity classes can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Oil change

NOTE

Not changing the engine oil in time may result in increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

**BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.**

Coolant

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalding. There is a danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.

Coolant level

General

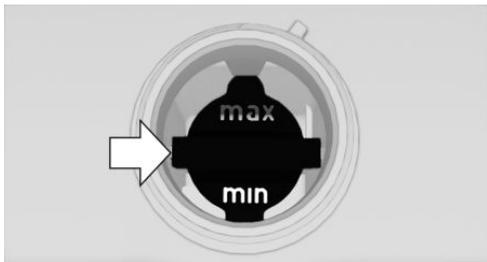
The vehicle has two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant tanks and top up if necessary.

The coolant level is shown by Min and Max marks in the filler neck of the coolant tank.

To check the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open the bonnet, see page 371.

- Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
- Open cap on coolant tank.
- The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks in the filler neck.



- Tighten cap.

Topping up

- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Open the bonnet, see page 371.
- Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
- Open cap on coolant tank.
- If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
- Tighten cap.
- Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Disposal



When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Washer fluid

General

All washer jets are supplied from one reservoir. Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the windscreen washer system, if necessary with the addition of antifreeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, 1.7 Imp. pints.

Safety notes

WARNING

Some antifreezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and fatal injury. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine and catch fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTE

Silicone additives mixed with the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid.

NOTE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.

Overview



The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or anti-freeze made of alcohol may result in false readings at low temperatures below -15 °C/+5 °F.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system indicates what maintenance measures are required and thereby assists in maintaining the road safety and operational safety of the vehicle.

The exact work required and the maintenance intervals may vary depending on the country variant. Replacement work, spare parts, operating materials and wear materials are calculated separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Principle

Sensors and special algorithms monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used. CBS uses this information to determine what maintenance is required.

The system therefore allows the scope of the maintenance work to be adapted to the individual usage profile.

General

Information on service requirements, see page 175, can be shown on the Control Display.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on maintenance requirements is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a programme of maintenance for your vehicle.

It is therefore important that you give the service advisor the vehicle key that you last used to drive the vehicle.

Periods out of use

Periods when the vehicle is out of use with its battery disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, have any time-dependent maintenance procedures, for example those concerning the brake fluid and, where applicable, the engine oil and microfilter/activated charcoal filter, updated by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data. As with a service booklet, the entries provide evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is saved

both in the vehicle and in the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

The data entered in the electronic service history can also be viewed by the new vehicle owner after a change of vehicle owner. A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to lodge an objection to entries being made in the electronic service history and to associated storage in the vehicle and transfer to the vehicle manufacturer of any data relating to his/her time as the vehicle owner. In such cases, no entries will be made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

Displays

Maintenance entered is shown on the Control Display, see page 176.

For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD

General

Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected to the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety note

NOTE

Incorrect use of the OBD on-board diagnosis socket can result in malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Only have service and maintenance work involving the OBD on-board diagnosis socket carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the OBD on-board diagnosis socket.

Position



The OBD socket for checking emissions-relevant components is located on the driver's side.

Engine warning light



▷ When warning light flashes:

May have engine failure that may cause damage to the catalyst device. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ When warning light illuminates:

High exhaust gas value. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle recycling

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends handing the vehicle in at a take-back point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

High-voltage battery recycling

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop dispose of high-voltage batteries that are at the end of their useful life or are defective.

The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. For more information, see www.bmw.com.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

On-board tool kit



The on-board tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the boot, under a cover.

Remove the charging bag if necessary.

Wiper blades

Safety notes

NOTE

The windscreen may sustain damage if a wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not

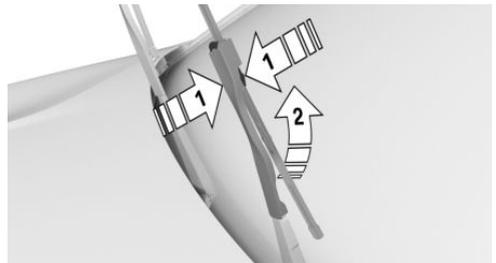
fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTE

Wipers that are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreen.

Replacing

1. To replace the wiper blade, move the wiper to the fold-out position, see page 157.
2. Fold out wiper arm and hold firm.
3. Press together securing spring, arrow 1, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Take the wiper blade forwards out of the fitting.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in the opposite sequence ensuring that it clips into place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

Bulbs and lights

General

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

All headlights and other lights use LED or laser technology.

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are similar to conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

In the case of a defect, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having respective work carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Concentrated laser light can cause irritation or lasting damage to the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having work on the lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the headlight glass can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation

disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increasingly forms, for example if there are water droplets in the lamp despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General

The battery is maintenance-free.

To ensure that all systems will continue to function correctly, the vehicle battery will need to be replaced after 8 years at the latest. A Check Control message is shown.

More information regarding the battery can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.

Pairing the battery with the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop pair the vehicle battery with the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Hazard symbols

The following hazard symbols can be found on the vehicle battery:

Symbol	Meaning
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
	Wear protective goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of acid burns: wear gloves, do not tilt the battery.
	Rinse any splashes of acid with water immediately. If acid comes into contact with eyes or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
	No direct sunlight, no frost.
	Follow the user manual.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not seal any openings on the battery.

Replacing the battery

General

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only having the vehicle battery replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop. If the battery is not replaced correctly, the vehicle may not recognise it properly and perfect functioning cannot be guaranteed.

Safety note

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

Notes on removal

Observe the following notes on removing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Park the vehicle and switch off consumers.
- ▷ First disconnect the power at the negative terminal. Then disconnect the power at the positive terminal.

Notes on installation

Observe the following notes on installing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Remove any foreign bodies from the battery holder.
- ▷ Only install the battery in the intended position in the vehicle.
- ▷ Keep the battery and vehicle connection contacts clean.
- ▷ First connect the power at the positive terminal. Then connect the power at the negative terminal.
- ▷ Use the connections, connectors and covers provided.
- ▷ Connect a hose to the gas outlet opening if necessary.

Initial operation

The battery is operational. No special precautions are required for start-up.

Charging the battery

General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

Charge the battery under the following circumstances:

- ▷ If the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- ▷ If there is insufficient starting capability.

The following conditions can have a negative effect on battery output:

- ▷ Frequently driving short distances.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for periods of longer than one month.

Safety note

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the on-board network can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery via the jump-starting connections, see page 394, in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

Power failure

Following an electrical power failure, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▷ Memory function: save positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass Roof: initialise system.

Storing the battery

Observe the following information on storing vehicle batteries:

- ▷ Store the battery in a cool and dry place.
- ▷ Protect the battery from direct sunlight and frost.
- ▷ Only clean the battery with a damp, anti-static cloth.
- ▷ Store the battery upright and secure it against falling over.
- ▷ Install the oldest batteries first.
- ▷ Do not remove the protective cap from the contacts.
- ▷ Charge or install the battery by the date on the battery label at the latest. Once fully charged, the battery will work for another 10 months.

Disposing of the old battery



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Warranty

See the vehicle purchase contract for information on the battery warranty.

Fuses

General

The fuses are located at different positions in the vehicle.

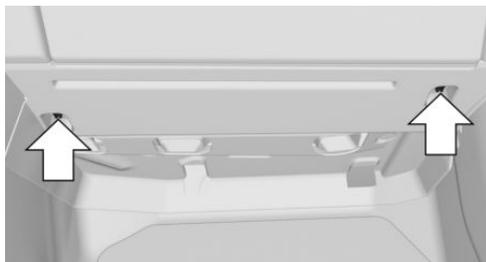
Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a risk of fire. Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with a different colour or amp rating.

In the interior

The fuses are located in the interior, behind a cover in the front seat passenger footwell.



Undo fastenings, arrow, and open cover.

The fuse box is located at the front right.

Inside the boot

The fuses are located behind a cover on the right-hand side in the boot.



Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.

The fuse box may be located behind sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fuse-card.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Other fuse boxes

There are other fuse boxes in the vehicle. In the event of a fault, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having fuses changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Help in case of a breakdown

Vehicle equipment

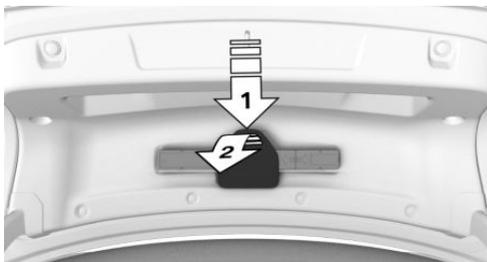
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located inside the boot lid.

Press the release catch, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General

Some items in the kit have a limited shelf life.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage



The first-aid kit is located in the right storage compartment of the boot.

BMW Emergency Service

Principle

BMW Group breakdown assistance can be contacted if you require help in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the case of a breakdown, data on the vehicle condition can be transferred to the BMW breakdown assistance. It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

There are various ways of contacting BMW breakdown assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message, see page 171.
- ▷ Calling with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW Connected app.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

When equipped with Teleservice, support is provided first through Teleservice Diagnosis and then by Teleservice Assistance.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If applicable, "BMW Roadside Assist."
A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the detailed vehicle data required for diagnosis to be transferred via mobile communications. This data is transferred automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Assistance

Teleservice Assistance is a country-specific feature that allows BMW breakdown assistance to carry out a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile communications.

Teleservice Assistance can be started after a prompt by BMW breakdown assistance.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.

3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Assistance.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if help is required in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the Control Display. When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle condition is transferred to BMW.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message prompting the driver to call BMW Accident Assistance is shown on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly: "Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the saved Check Control messages, see page 171, for a certain length of time.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "Call BMW Accident Assistance"

Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency call

Statutory emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

The emergency call establishes a connection to a public emergency call number.

This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and national regulations.

The emergency call is placed using the SIM card integrated in the vehicle and cannot be switched off.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



 SOS button.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the airbags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. An automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap on cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.
 - ▷ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

In the case of an emergency call, data is sent to the public rescue coordination centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required. The data may include, for example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

For information on data transfer and storage, see page 14.

Even if you can no longer hear the rescue coordination centre through the loudspeakers, the rescue coordination centre may still be able to hear you speak.

The rescue coordination centre ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The emergency call function may be impaired.

The LED near the emergency call button illuminates for approx. 30 seconds. A Check Control message is shown.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

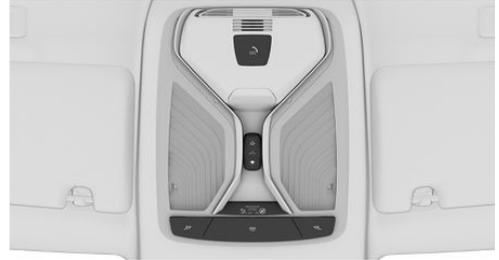
Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

The intelligent emergency call system establishes a connection with the BMW emergency call centre.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be established to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



SOS button.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▶ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the airbags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. An automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap on cover flap.
 2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.
- ▶ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

When an emergency call is sent via BMW, data is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required. The data may include, for example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

If questions posed by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are implemented automatically.

Even if you can no longer hear the emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the emergency call centre may still be able to hear you speak.

The emergency call centre ends the emergency call.

Fire extinguisher

Principle

The fire extinguisher can be used to put out vehicle fires.

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and national-market version, the vehicle may have a fire extinguisher.

Overview

The fire extinguisher is located at the front of the front passenger seat.

Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the fire extinguisher can cause injury. There is a danger of injury. Observe the information below when using the fire extinguisher:

- ▷ Do not inhale the extinguishing agent. If the extinguishing agent is inhaled, move the casualty out into the fresh air. If the casualty experiences breathing difficulties, contact a doctor immediately.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the skin. Prolonged contact with the extinguishing agent can cause the skin to dry out.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the eyes. If it does come into contact with the eyes, rinse them immediately with plenty of water. In case of prolonged discomfort, contact a doctor.

Removing the fire extinguisher

Open the buckles on the retaining strap.

Using the fire extinguisher

To use the fire extinguisher, follow the manufacturer's instructions on the fire extinguisher and the information supplied with it.

Stowing the fire extinguisher

1. Insert the fire extinguisher into the holder.
2. Hook in and close the buckles.

Maintenance and refilling

Have the fire extinguisher checked every 2 years by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Take note of the next maintenance date for the fire extinguisher.

Replace the fire extinguisher after use or have it refilled.

Conduct after an accident

Safety notes

WARNING

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or even death. After an accident, do not touch any high-voltage components, for example orange high-voltage cables or parts which are in contact with free high-voltage cables.

WARNING

Fluids in the high-voltage battery are corrosive. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch fluid from the high-voltage battery.

General

After an accident, take the following safety measures regarding the high-voltage system:

- ▶ Secure the area where the accident has taken place.
- ▶ Inform the fire, police or ambulance service immediately that it involves a vehicle with a high-voltage system.
- ▶ Put the selector lever into position P, apply the parking brake and switch off or deactivate standby state or drive-ready state.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle when you leave it.
- ▶ Do not inhale any gases from the high-voltage battery and keep away from the vehicle as appropriate.

Starting assistance

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started from another vehicle's battery using two jump leads. Only use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Vehicles with hybrid drive cannot provide starting assistance.

Safety notes

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a danger of injury. Please comply with the correct sequence when connecting.

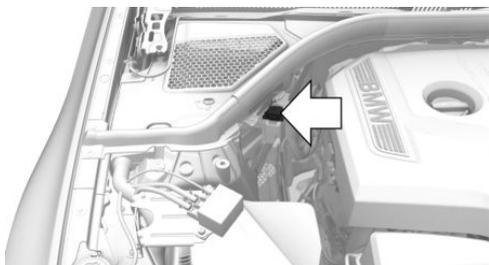
NOTE

Contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting assistance. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure there is no contact between the bodywork.

Preparations

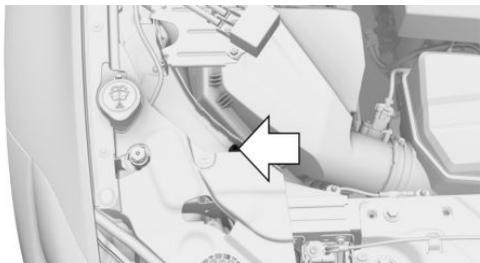
1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the other vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump-starting connections



The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.

Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.



A special connection on the body serves as battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary power consumers, for example the radio, on both vehicles.

1. Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.
2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the other vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corresponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle being started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/- jump lead to the negative terminal of the bat-

tery or the corresponding engine or body earth connection on the other vehicle.

5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a corresponding engine or body earth connection on the vehicle being started.

Establishing drive-ready state

1. Start the engine of the other vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly higher idle speed.
2. Establish drive-ready state in the normal way in the vehicle to be started.

If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait a few minutes before trying again to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order to connection.

Check the battery and have it recharged if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety note

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General

Do not have the vehicle towed.

Safety notes

NOTE

If the vehicle is towed with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

NOTE

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a risk of material damage.

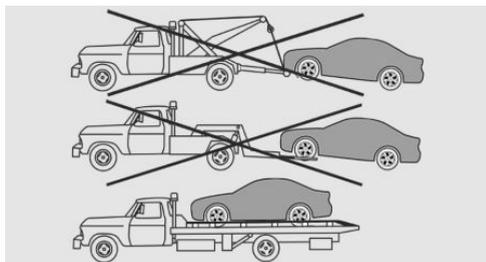
- ▷ Raise the vehicle with suitable equipment.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or chassis parts.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from danger, it can be pushed for a short distance.

To roll or push the vehicle, see page 159.

Towing truck



Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made iden-

tifiable to other road users, for instance by placing a sign or the warning triangle in the rear window.

With Safe Share function: to remove a broken-down vehicle from a dangerous area, it can be towed over a short distance at a maximum speed of 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle being towed, the towing eye may be pulled off or it may not be possible to control the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

NOTE

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.

Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Tow bar clearance may be limited when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached at an angle.

Towing rope

Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Use nylon ropes or straps that will allow the vehicle to be towed smoothly.

Towing eye

General



Always keep the screw-on towing eye in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed into the front or rear end of the vehicle.

The towing eye is located in the on-board tool kit, see page 383.

- ▶ Only use the towing eye supplied with the vehicle and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- ▶ Only use the towing eye for towing on paved roads.
- ▶ Avoid transverse loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.

Safety note

NOTE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.

Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using starting assistance, see page 393.

Have the cause of the starting problems rectified by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Washing the vehicle

General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example leaves, from the area below the windscreen with the bonnet raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently, especially in winter. Heavy soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

Safety note

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. There is a risk of material damage. Maintain a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.

Distances and temperature

- ▶ Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- ▶ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, 12 in.
- ▶ Minimum distance to the Glass Roof: 80 cm, 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety note

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the following notes:

- ▶ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▶ Avoid washing bays or car washes with guide rails higher than 10 cm, 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.
- ▶ Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▶ Fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damaging them.
- ▶ Deactivate the wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Entering a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety note

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

General

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

To roll or push the vehicle, see page 159.

Some car washes require you to get out of the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

Exiting from a car wash

Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle. Switch on drive-ready state, see page 50.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities such as insect residues with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After the vehicle has been washed, briefly apply the brakes to dry them, otherwise braking effectiveness may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the windscreens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. There is a danger of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with high air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or pollen, may affect the vehicle paintwork. Take such factors into consideration when deciding on the frequency and scope of vehicle care measures.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, for example spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings so as to prevent damage and discolouration of the paintwork.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Care of upholstery fabrics

General

Regularly clean the upholstery with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean the upholstery up to the seams using wide wiping actions. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Safety note

NOTE

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.

Care of special parts

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning the wheels while they are installed on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value of between 5 and 9. Do not use abrasive cleaners or steam cleaners above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective layer of adjacent parts, for example brake discs.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Chrome-like surfaces should be cleaned carefully with plenty of water, particularly if affected by road salt, if necessary with added car shampoo.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Rubber parts subjected to high wear and tear should be treated regularly with rubber care products. Do not use silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Treat parts made from kenaf fibres with a suitable care product only.

Plastic parts

NOTE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water, if necessary.

Clean with a microfibre cloth.

Lightly moisten the cloth with water, if necessary.

Do not soak the roof lining.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective function of the seat belts will be lost. There is a danger of injury or even death. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirt on the belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

Only clean the belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

Carpets and foot mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor

mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors and camera lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays, screens and protective glass of the Head-Up Display

NOTE

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

NOTE

Incorrect cleaning can damage the surfaces of displays. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.

Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-Up Display with a microfibre cloth and commercially available dishwashing liquid.

Long periods of non-use and laying up the vehicle

Principle

When the vehicle is standing around for several weeks, where possible stop with a fully-charged high-voltage battery.

Do not place the vehicle in storage for longer than 14 days if the electric range has been used up.

For phases of standing of up to three months, where possible park the vehicle plugged into a suitable power source or virtually fully charged.

General

A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop will be pleased to advise you on the measures that should be taken when placing the vehicle in storage for longer than three months.

Safety note

NOTE

Excessive discharging can damage the high-voltage battery. There is a risk of material damage. Before standing for a long time, ensure that the high-voltage battery is fully charged.

During the stationary phase, connect the vehicle to a suitable charging location with a charging station. The high-voltage battery is charged automatically as needed. Ensure that the charging process can be carried out. Check the charge state regularly.

Do not leave the vehicle standing for more than three months with a charge level less than approximately 50 %.





🔍 REFERENCE

Technical data	404
Appendix	406
Everything from A to Z	408

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are reference figures. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to selected special equipment, country variants or country-specific measurement methods. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on information plates on

the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle documents always takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Handbook.

Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing or

spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected special equipment, tyres, loads and suspension design.

BMW 3 Series Saloon

Width with mirrors	mm (in)	2068 (81.4)
Width without mirrors	mm (in)	1827 (71.9)
Height	mm (in)	1444 (56.9)
Length	mm (in)	4709 (185.4)
Wheelbase	mm (in)	2851 (112.2)
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	11.4 (37.4)

Weights

330e

Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1815 (4001)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2265 (4993)
Load	kg (lb)	525 (1157)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1035 (2282)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1305 (2877)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)

Filling capacities

BMW 3 Series Saloon

Fuel tank, approximately.	Litres (gal)	40.0 (8.8)
---------------------------	--------------	------------

Observe the additional information on fuel quality, see page [373](#).

Appendix

General

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates after going to press

After the copy deadline for the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, the following chapters were updated in the printed Owner's Handbook:

- ▶ BMW Remote Software Upgrade: Installing an upgrade: Preparing the vehicle, see page [70](#).
- ▶ Displays: Central display area, see page [165](#).
- ▶ Safety: Lane Departure Warning.
- ▶ Air conditioning: Standing air conditioning.

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

- A/C button, see Cooling function [292](#)
- ABS, anti-lock braking system [237](#)
- Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control [162](#)
- Accessories and parts [11](#)
- Accident Assistance [389](#)
- Accident, conduct [393](#)
- Accident prevention, see Active Protection [233](#)
- ACC, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- Acoustic pedestrian protection [147](#)
- AC quick charging cable [334](#)
- Activated carbon filter [295](#)
- Activation, airbags [196](#)
- Active bonnet, see Active pedestrian protection [197](#)
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC [245](#)
- Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
- Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
- Active PDC, see Emergency braking function [265](#)
- Active pedestrian protection [197](#)
- Active Protection [233](#)
- Adaptive brake assist [237](#)
- Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights [231](#)
- Adaptive energy management [170](#)
- Adaptive Headlights [188](#)
- Adaptive hybrid mode [170](#)
- Adaptive M suspension [286](#)
- Adaptive recuperation [328](#)
- Additives, engine oil grades [376](#)
- Age of tyres [347](#)
- Airbags [194](#)
- Airbags, indicator/warning lamp [195](#)
- Airbag switch, see Key switch [196](#)
- Air conditioning [287](#)
- Air distribution, manual [290](#), [295](#)
- Air flow, automatic air conditioning [289](#), [294](#)
- Air outlets, see Ventilation [296](#)
- Air pressure, tyres [344](#)
- Alarm, false [110](#)
- Alarm system [109](#)
- All-season tyres, see Winter tyres [348](#)
- Amazon Alexa Car Integration [64](#)
- Ambient lighting [192](#)
- Angle, backrest [118](#)
- Antifreeze protection, see Washer fluid [378](#)
- Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [378](#)
- Anti-lock braking system, ABS [237](#)
- Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system [109](#)
- Anti-theft system, locking [91](#)
- Anti-theft system, see Thiefproof wheel studs [366](#)
- Anti-theft, wheel studs [366](#)
- Anti-trap mechanism, Glass Roof [114](#)
- Anti-trap mechanism, windows [111](#)
- Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to vehicle [86](#)
- Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Aquaplaning [320](#)
- Artificial engine noise, see Audible pedestrian protection [147](#)
- Ashtray [301](#)
- Attention camera for driver, see Driver Attention Camera [75](#)
- Attentiveness assistant [235](#)
- AUC automatic air recirculation control AUC [294](#)
- Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- AUTO H button, see Parking brake [151](#)
- Automatic air conditioning [287](#), [291](#)
- Automatic air recirculation control AUC [294](#)
- Automatic anti-glare control, see High-beam assistance [189](#)
- Automatic driving lights control [185](#)
- Automatic gearbox, see Steptronic transmission [158](#)

Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [151](#)
 Automatic locking [108](#)
 Automatic parking [277](#)
 Automatic parking function, exterior mirror [126](#)
 Automatic start-stop function [148](#)
 Automatic unlocking [108](#)
 AUTO programme, automatic air conditioning [289, 293](#)
 AUTO programme, intensity [293](#)
 Auto Start Stop function [148](#)
 Average consumption, see Journey data [180](#)
 Avoidance assistant [203](#)
 Avoiding false alarms [110](#)
 Axle load limit [405](#)
 Axle loads, weight [405](#)

B

Backrest angle [118](#)
 Backrest contour, see Lumbar support [118](#)
 Backrest, seats [116](#)
 Backrest width [119](#)
 Bag holders [310](#)
 Bar for tow-starting/towing [395](#)
 Battery changing, vehicle key [93](#)
 Battery, charge state indicator [167](#)
 Battery charging, see Charging the vehicle [332](#)
 BATTERY CONTROL button [144](#)
 BATTERY CONTROL, electric driving [144](#)
 Battery, disposing of [386](#)
 Battery, vehicle [384](#)
 Belts, see Seat belts [119](#)
 Black ice, see Outside temperature warning [174](#)
 Blower, see Air flow [289, 294](#)
 Bluetooth connection [83](#)
 Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 BMW 360° ELECTRIC portal, see Intelligent charging [338](#)
 BMW Digital Key [100](#)
 BMW Drive Recorder [232](#)
 BMW eDRIVE [144](#)
 BMW Gesture Control [66](#)
 BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [65](#)
 BMW Maintenance System [380](#)

BMW Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Bonnet [371](#)
 Boot [309](#)
 Boot, expanding, boot floor [312](#)
 Boot, extending [311](#)
 Boot lid [103](#)
 Boot lid contactless opening and closing [98](#)
 Boot lid, emergency release [105](#)
 Boot lid, vehicle key [92](#)
 Boot with emergency wheel, expanding [313](#)
 Bottle holder, see Cupholder [307](#)
 Brake assist [237](#)
 Brake assist, adaptive [237](#)
 Brake discs, see Brake system [318](#)
 Brake lights, adaptive, see Dynamic brake lights [231](#)
 Brake lights, dynamic [231](#)
 Brake pads, see Brake system [318](#)
 Brake system [318](#)
 Braking, notes [320](#)
 Braking safely [320](#)
 Breakdown assistance [388](#)
 Breakdown, help [388](#)
 Break recommendations, see Attentiveness assistant [235](#)
 Brightness, Control Display [76](#)
 Bulbs and lights [384](#)
 Buttons on the steering wheel [44](#)
 Button SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [391](#)
 Button, start/stop [147](#)

C

Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
 Camera lenses, care [400](#)
 Camera, rear-view camera, without Surround View [267](#)
 Camera, see Surround View [270](#)
 CANCEL button, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
 CANCEL button, see Cruise Control [243](#)
 Can holder, see Cupholder [307](#)
 Care, Head-Up Display [400](#)

- Care of displays, screens [400](#)
- Care of upholstery fabrics [399](#)
- Care products [398](#)
- Care, see Vehicle wash [397](#)
- Care, vehicle [398](#)
- Car key, see Vehicle key [90](#)
- Carpet, care [400](#)
- CarPlay, connection to vehicle [86](#)
- Carrying children [130](#)
- Carrying children safely [130](#)
- Car wash [397](#)
- Car washes [397](#)
- Car washes, automatic [397](#)
- Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [319](#)
- CBS Condition Based Service [380](#)
- Central key, see Vehicle key [90](#)
- Central locking system [96](#)
- Central screen, see Control Display [56](#)
- Centre armrest [307](#)
- Centre armrest, front [307](#)
- Centre console [47](#)
- Changes, technical, see Your own safety [10](#)
- Changing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
- Changing gear, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
- Changing tyres [347](#)
- Changing wheels [347](#)
- Changing wheels/tyres [347](#)
- CHARGE, energy recuperation [146](#)
- CHARGE, performance display [168](#)
- Charge screen [167](#)
- Charge state, display [336](#)
- Charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery [167](#)
- Charge state, see Display of charge state [336](#)
- Charging cables, stowing, see Storage [334](#)
- Charging, see Charging the vehicle [332](#)
- Charging the battery, see Charging the vehicle [332](#)
- Charging the vehicle [332](#)
- Charging to save fuel [324](#)
- Charging, vehicle [332](#)
- Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [18](#)
- Check Control [170](#)
- Child locks [143](#)
- Child restraint systems, i-Size [133](#)
- Child restraint systems, see Carrying children safely [130](#)
- Child seat classes, see ISOFIX child restraint systems [132](#)
- Child seat mounting [131](#)
- Child seat mountings, ISOFIX [132](#)
- Child seats, see Carrying children safely [130](#)
- Chrome-plated surfaces, care [399](#)
- Chrome surfaces, care [399](#)
- Cigarette lighter [302](#)
- Cleaning, Head-Up Display [400](#)
- Cleaning of displays, screens [400](#)
- Closing during rain, see Closing the Glass Roof automatically [109](#)
- Closing the Glass Roof automatically [109](#)
- Coasting [146](#)
- Coat hooks [308](#)
- Comfort Access [96](#)
- Comfort closing, vehicle key [92](#)
- Comfort opening, vehicle key [91](#)
- COMFORT PLUS, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
- Communication, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel [368](#)
- Compatible devices, see Suitable devices [83](#)
- Compressor [351](#)
- Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Condensation when vehicle is parked [321](#)
- Condensation, windscreen [290](#), [295](#)
- Condition Based Service CBS [380](#)
- ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Connecting a device [82](#)
- Connecting a mobile telephone [82](#)
- Connecting, electrical devices, see Sockets [302](#)
- Connecting, mobile devices [82](#)
- Connection point, starting assistance [394](#)
- Connections, Screen Mirroring [87](#)
- Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster [166](#)
- Consumption, see Current consumption [166](#)
- Consumption, see Journey data [180](#)
- Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid [98](#)

- Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Contact with water, hybrid system [19](#)
- Continuing a journey with a flat tyre [360](#), [363](#)
- Control Display [56](#)
- Control Display, settings [72](#)
- Controller [56](#)
- Control systems, driving stability [237](#)
- Coolant [377](#)
- Coolant level [377](#)
- Cooling effect, maximum [288](#), [293](#)
- Cooling function [288](#), [292](#)
- Cooling system [377](#)
- Cornering light [189](#)
- Corrosion of brake discs [321](#)
- Crossing traffic warning [283](#)
- Cruise Control, active with Stop&Go function [245](#)
- Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- Cruise Control, see Cruise Control [243](#)
- Cruise Control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- Cruise Control without distance control, see Cruise Control [243](#)
- Cupholder [307](#)
- Cupholder, front [307](#)
- Cupholder, rear [307](#)
- Current consumption [166](#)
- ## D
- Damage, tyres [346](#)
- Dash cam, see BMW Drive Recorder [232](#)
- Data memory [11](#)
- Data protection, settings [77](#)
- Data, see Deleting personal data [77](#)
- Data, technical [404](#)
- Date [73](#)
- Daytime driving lights [187](#)
- DCC, see Cruise Control [243](#)
- Deactivation, airbags [196](#)
- Deactivation, hybrid system [19](#)
- Defrosting, see Defrosting the windscreen [290](#), [295](#)
- Defrosting, windscreen [290](#), [295](#)
- Deleting personal data [77](#)
- Departure times, standing air conditioning [299](#)
- Desired speed, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- Destination entry, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Device list [88](#)
- Diagnosis connection [381](#)
- Digital Key [100](#)
- Dimensions [404](#)
- Dimensions, see Technical data [404](#)
- Dimming exterior mirror [126](#)
- Dimming rear-view mirror [127](#)
- Dipping headlights, see High-beam assistance [189](#)
- Direction indicators, see Turn indicators [154](#)
- Direct selection buttons, see Favourites buttons [55](#)
- Display and input [53](#)
- Display in the windscreen, see Head-Up Display [182](#)
- Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [192](#)
- Displays [164](#)
- Displays and symbols [9](#)
- Displays, screens [400](#)
- Disposal, coolant [378](#)
- Disposal, vehicle battery [386](#)
- Disposing of the old battery [386](#)
- Distance warning, see PDC [263](#)
- Door handle lighting, see Welcome light [187](#)
- Door opening angle, Surround View [272](#)
- Downhill gradients [321](#)
- Drive mode, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
- Drive-off assistant [237](#)
- Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera [75](#)
- Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
- Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
- Driver Attention Camera [75](#)
- Drive-ready state, electric [50](#)
- Drive-ready state, engine start [50](#)
- Drive-ready state, rest state and standby state [49](#)
- Driver profiles [78](#)
- Driver profile, setting up [78](#)
- Driver profiles, welcome screen [78](#)
- Driving [144](#)
- Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)

Driving comfort [286](#)
 Driving Experience Control [148](#)
 Driving hints [318](#)
 Driving information, general [318](#)
 Driving information, running in [318](#)
 Driving instructions, hybrid system [324](#)
 Driving lights control, automatic [185](#)
 Driving path lines, rear-view camera [268](#)
 Driving path lines, Surround View [272](#)
 Driving Stability Control Systems [237](#)
 Driving style analysis, HYBRID ECO PRO [328](#)
 Driving through water [320](#)
 Driving with hybrid drive, HYBRID [144](#)
 Driving with internal combustion engine, POWER [144](#)
 Drying air, see Cooling function [288](#), [292](#)
 DSC Dynamic Stability Control [237](#)
 DTC, Dynamic Traction Control [239](#)
 DVD, video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Dynamic brake lights [231](#)
 Dynamic ECO lighting function [188](#)
 Dynamic Stability Control DSC [237](#)
 Dynamic Traction Control DTC [239](#)

E

eASSIST, support for the internal combustion engine [146](#)
 eBOOST, support for the internal combustion engine [147](#)
 ECO lighting function, dynamic [188](#)
 Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster [166](#)
 Efficient4x4, see xDrive [239](#)
 Electrical power window switches [110](#)
 ELECTRIC button [144](#)
 Electric drive-ready state [50](#)
 Electric driving, BATTERY CONTROL [144](#)
 Electric driving, ELECTRIC [144](#)
 Electric driving, ePOWER [144](#)
 ELECTRIC, electric driving [144](#)
 Electric glass roof [112](#)
 ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
 ELECTRIC, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)

Electronic oil measurement [374](#)
 Electronic Stability Programme, ESP, see DSC [237](#)
 E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Emergency assistance, see Accident Assistance [389](#)
 Emergency assistance, see Breakdown assistance [388](#)
 Emergency boot release [105](#)
 Emergency brake, see Emergency stop assistant [230](#)
 Emergency braking function when parking, Active PDC [265](#)
 Emergency call [390](#)
 Emergency release, boot lid [105](#)
 Emergency release, fuel filler flap [343](#)
 Emergency release, transmission lockout [162](#)
 Emergency running properties, tyres [349](#)
 Emergency service, see Accident Assistance [389](#)
 Emergency services, see Breakdown assistance [388](#)
 Emergency stop assistant [230](#)
 Emergency unlocking, charging cable [335](#)
 Emergency wheel [368](#)
 Energy recuperation, CHARGE [146](#)
 Engine, automatic start-stop function [148](#)
 Engine compartment [370](#)
 Engine coolant [377](#)
 Engine noise, artificial, see Audible pedestrian protection [147](#)
 Engine oil change [377](#)
 Engine oil filler neck [375](#)
 Engine oil grades for topping up [376](#)
 Engine oil level, checking electronically [374](#)
 Engine oil, replenishing [375](#)
 Engine start, see Drive-ready state [50](#)
 Engine start, starting assistance [393](#)
 Entering an address, Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Entering letters and numbers [58](#)
 Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Entry comparison, navigation [54](#)

ePOWER, electric driving [144](#)
ePOWER, performance display [168](#)
Equipment, interior [301](#)
ESP, Electronic Stability Programme, see
DSC [237](#)
Exchanging wheels and tyres [347](#)
Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
Exhaust, see Exhaust system [319](#)
Exhaust system [319](#)
Exterior lights when unlocking [91](#)
Exterior lights with the vehicle locked [92](#)
Exterior mirror, automatically dimming [126](#)
Exterior mirror, automatic parking function [126](#)
Exterior mirrors [125](#)
Exterior mirrors, malfunction [126](#)
External start, see Starting assistance [393](#)
Eye for towing [396](#)
Eyes, see Lashing eye in the boot [310](#)

F

Factory settings [76](#)
Failure message, see Check Control [170](#)
False alarm, see Avoiding false alarms [110](#)
Fan run-on, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts [119](#)
Fatigue warning function [235](#)
Fault displays, see Check Control [170](#)
Favourites buttons, iDrive [55](#)
Filler neck for engine oil [375](#)
Filter, see Microfilter [290](#)
Filter, see Microfilter/activated carbon filter [295](#)
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations
and Points of Interest, see Owner's Handbook
for Navigation, Entertainment, Communica-
tion [8](#)
Fine wood parts, care [399](#)
Fire extinguisher [392](#)
First-aid kit [388](#)
First-aid set, see First-aid kit [388](#)
Flank protection, Surround View [272](#)
Flank protection without Surround View [266](#)
Flat tyre, continuing a journey [360](#), [363](#)
Flat tyre message, RPA [362](#)
Flat tyre message, TPM [358](#)
Flat tyre, remedying [350](#)

Flat tyre, runflat indicator RPA [361](#)
Flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [355](#)
Flat tyre warning lamp, RPA [362](#)
Flat tyre warning lamp, TPM [358](#)
Flat tyre, wheel change [364](#)
Flooding [320](#)
Floor carpet, care [400](#)
Fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
Fold-out position of windscreen wipers [157](#)
Foot brake [320](#)
Foot mats, care [400](#)
Four-wheel drive, see xDrive [239](#)
Front airbags [194](#)
Front collision warning, see Intelligent
Safety [198](#)
Front-end collision warning with City braking
function [200](#)
Front-end collision warning with light braking
function [200](#)
Front fog lights [191](#)
Front head restraints [122](#)
Front neck supports, see Head restraints [122](#)
Front passenger's mirror, tilting down, see Auto-
matic parking function [126](#)
Front passenger airbags, deactivation/activa-
tion [196](#)
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp [197](#)
Front seats [116](#)
Fuel [373](#)
Fuel filler flap [342](#)
Fuel filler flap, manual release [343](#)
Fuel gauge [174](#)
Fuel quality [373](#)
Fuel recommendation [373](#)
Fuel tank cap [342](#)
Fuel, tank capacity [405](#)
Fuel, tank capacity, see Technical data [404](#)
Functions, hybrid system [144](#)
Fuses [387](#)

G

Gearbox, see Steptronic transmission [158](#)
General driving information [318](#)
General settings [72](#)
Gesture Control [66](#)

Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control [66](#)
 Give way warning [224](#)
 Glare protection, see Sun visor [301](#)
 Glass Roof, electric [112](#)
 Glass Roof, initialising system [114](#)
 Glove box [305](#)
 GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 GPS positioning, vehicle position [75](#)

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake [151](#)
 Hands-free system, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Hazard warning lights [388](#)
 Head airbags [194](#)
 Head Light, adaptive [188](#)
 Headlight cleaning system, see Wiper system [155](#)
 Headlight courtesy delay feature [187](#)
 Headlight courtesy delay feature, switching on [93](#)
 Headlight courtesy delay feature, vehicle key [108](#)
 Headlight flasher [155](#)
 Headlight glass [384](#)
 Headlights, care [398](#)
 Headlights, setting [191](#)
 Head restraints and seats [116](#)
 Head-Up Display [182](#)
 Head-Up Display, care [400](#)
 Head-Up Display, see Memory function [128](#)
 Heavy transported loads, stowing [309](#)
 Help in case of a breakdown [388](#)
 Help in driving off, see Drive-off assistant [237](#)
 High-beam assistance [189](#)
 High-beam headlights [155](#)
 High-voltage battery, charge state indicator [167](#)
 High-voltage battery, recycling [382](#)
 Hill Start Assist, see Drive-off assistant [237](#)
 Hold charge state, BATTERY CONTROL [144](#)
 Holder for beverages [307](#)
 Home page [8](#)
 Horn [44](#)
 Hotel function, see Parking service mode [105](#)

Hot exhaust system [319](#)
 Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 HYBRID button [144](#)
 HYBRID COMFORT, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
 HYBRID, driving with hybrid drive [144](#)
 HYBRID ECO PRO, driving style analysis [328](#)
 HYBRID ECO PRO, route-ahead assistant [327](#)
 HYBRID ECO PRO, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
 HYBRID STANDARD, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
 Hybrid system, adjusting to the route [170](#)
 Hybrid system, automatic deactivation [19](#)
 Hybrid system, contact with water [19](#)
 Hybrid system indicators [167](#)
 Hybrid system, safety [19](#)
 Hybrid system, see BMW eDRIVE [144](#)
 Hybrid system, using efficiently [324](#)
 Hybrid system, working on [19](#)

I

iBrake – PostCrash [234](#)
 Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning [174](#)
 Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [18](#)
 iDrive [53](#)
 iDrive operating principle [53](#)
 Ignition key, see Vehicle key [90](#)
 Important considerations [130](#)
 Indicator and warning lamps [171](#)
 Indicator lamp, front passenger airbags [197](#)
 Indicators of the hybrid system [167](#)
 Individual air distribution [290](#), [295](#)
 Individual settings, see Driver profiles [78](#)
 Inductive charging of a smartphone, see Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Inflation pressure check, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [355](#)
 Inflation pressure, tyres [344](#)
 Inflation pressure warning RPA, tyres [361](#)
 Information on no passing [177](#)

Information window, Control Display [75](#)
Initialisation, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [357](#)
Initialising, runflat indicator RPA [362](#)
Input and display [53](#)
Instrument cluster [164](#)
Instrument cluster switch, see Turn indicators [154](#)
Instrument cluster switch, see Wiper system [155](#)
Instrument lighting [192](#)
Integrated key [94](#)
Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle [20](#)
Intelligent anticipation [170](#)
Intelligent charging [338](#)
Intelligent emergency call [391](#)
Intelligent Personal Assistant [65](#)
Intelligent Safety [198](#)
Intended use [10](#)
Intensity, AUTO programme [293](#)
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera [75](#)
Interior equipment [301](#)
Interior light [192](#)
Interior light when unlocking [91](#)
Interior light with the vehicle locked [92](#)
Interior movement detector [110](#)
Internet connection [85](#)
Internet hotspot [85](#)
Internet site [8](#)
Interval Display, see Service requirements [175](#)
i-Size child restraint systems [133](#)
ISOFIX, child seat mountings [132](#)

J

Jacking points [367](#)
Journey data [180](#)
Joystick, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
Jump-starting connections [394](#)
Jump starting, see Starting assistance [393](#)
Junction warning with City braking function [206](#)

K

Kenaf, care [399](#)
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [96](#)
Key, mechanical [94](#)

Key switch for front passenger airbags [196](#)
Kick-down, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
Knee airbag [195](#)

L

Labelling of recommended tyres [348](#)
Labelling of run-flat tyres [349](#)
Lane boundary, warning [213](#)
Lane Change Warning [216](#)
Lane control assistant [257](#)
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision warning [220](#)
Lane Departure Warning [213](#)
Language, set on the Control Display [74](#)
Laser high-beam headlights [190](#)
Lashing eyes in the boot [310](#)
Lashing straps, see Lashing eyes in the boot [310](#)
Launch Control [162](#)
Laying up the vehicle [401](#)
Laying up, vehicle [401](#)
Leather care [399](#)
Leaving a parking space, see Park Assistant [277](#)
LED fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
LEDs, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
Left-hand traffic, light setting [191](#)
Light alloy wheels, care [399](#)
Light-emitting diodes, replacing LEDs, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
Lighter [302](#)
Lighter, front [302](#)
Light in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning [283](#)
Lighting [185](#)
Light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning [216](#)
Lights [185](#)
Light switch [185](#)
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter [241](#)
List of all messages [72](#)
Loading [309](#)

Loading the boot, see Stowing transported loads [309](#)
 Locking, automatic [108](#)
 Locking, see Opening and closing [90](#)
 Locking settings [107](#)
 Locking the boot lid, see Parking service mode [105](#)
 Locking, vehicle key [91](#)
 Lock, power window switches, see Safety switch [112](#)
 Logging on, mobile devices, see Connections [82](#)
 Long periods of non-use and laying up the vehicle [401](#)
 Low-beam headlights [186](#)
 Luggage compartment lid, see Boot lid [103](#)
 Luggage rack, see Roof rack [321](#)
 Lumbar support [118](#)

M

Maintenance [380](#)
 Maintenance requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service [380](#)
 Maintenance, see Service requirements [175](#)
 Maintenance System, BMW [380](#)
 Make-up mirror [301](#)
 Malfunction displays, see Check Control [170](#)
 Malfunction, vehicle key [93](#)
 Managing devices [88](#)
 Manual air distribution [290, 295](#)
 Manual air flow [289, 294](#)
 Manual operation, fuel filler flap [343](#)
 Manual operation, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
 Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Matt paintwork [399](#)
 Maximum cooling effect [288, 293](#)
 Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info [177](#)
 Maximum speed of winter tyres [348](#)
 Media of the Owner's Handbook [20](#)
 Memory function [128](#)
 Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [179](#)
 Messages [72](#)

Messages, see Check Control [170](#)
 Microfilter [290, 295](#)
 Minimum tread depth, tyres [346](#)
 Mirrors [125](#)
 Mirror, see Memory function [128](#)
 Mirror, vanity [301](#)
 Mobile communication in the vehicle [320](#)
 Mobile devices, managing [88](#)
 Mobile phone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Mobile Service, see Accident Assistance [389](#)
 Mobile Service, see Breakdown assistance [388](#)
 Mobile telephone, connecting [82](#)
 Mobile telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Mobility System [350](#)
 Mode 2 charging [332](#)
 Mode 2 charging cable [334](#)
 Mode 3 charging cable, see AC rapid charging cable [334](#)
 MODE button, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
 Moisture in the headlights, see Headlight glass [384](#)
 Monitor, see Control Display [56](#)
 Mounting child restraints [131](#)
 MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 M suspension, adaptive [286](#)
 Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [44](#)
 Multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Music hard disc, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Music tracks, Gesture Control [67](#)

N

Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Net, boot [310](#)
 Neutral cleaner, light alloy wheels [399](#)
 New wheels and tyres [347](#)
 No Passing Information [177](#)
 Notes [8](#)

Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [395](#)

O

OBD on-board diagnosis [381](#)
Obstacle marker, rear-view camera [268](#)
Obstacle marking, Surround View [272](#)
Odometer, see Journey data [180](#)
Oil change [377](#)
Oil change interval, see Service requirements [175](#)
Oil filler neck [375](#)
Oil grades for topping up, engine [376](#)
Oil level, checking electronically [374](#)
Oil, replenishing [375](#)
On-board computer, see Journey data [180](#)
On-board diagnosis OBD [381](#)
On-board literature, printed [20](#)
On-board monitor, see Control Display [56](#)
On-board tool kit [383](#)
Online entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
Opening and closing [90](#)
Operating menus, see iDrive [53](#)
Outside air, see AUC [294](#)
Outside temperature [174](#)
Owner's Handbook, printed [20](#)

P

Paintwork, vehicle [398](#)
Panorama View, see Surround View [270](#)
Park Assistant [277](#)
Park Assistant Plus, see Surround View [270](#)
Park Distance Control PDC [263](#)
Parking aid, see PDC [263](#)
Parking Assistant Plus, see Surround View [270](#)
Parking Assistant, see Park Assistant [277](#)
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [151](#)
Parking brake [151](#)
Parking lights [186](#)
Parking service mode [105](#)
Particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
Part replacement [383](#)

Parts and accessories [11](#)
PDC Park Distance Control [263](#)
Pedestrian protection, acoustic [147](#)
Pedestrian protection, active [197](#)
Performance Control [286](#)
Personal data, deleting [77](#)
Personal profile, see Driver profiles [78](#)
Personal settings [77](#)
Person warning with braking function [210](#)
Petrol [373](#)
Petrol particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
Phone call, Gesture Control [67](#)
Phone, connecting [82](#)
Place for children [130](#)
Plasters, see First-aid kit [388](#)
Plastic parts, care [400](#)
Pockets, doors [306](#)
Positioning, vehicle position [75](#)
PostCrash – iBrake [234](#)
Power display, see Sport displays [181](#)
POWER, driving with internal combustion engine [144](#)
Power failure [386](#)
POWER, performance display [168](#)
Power window switches [110](#)
Preliminary air conditioning, see Standing air conditioning [298](#)
Pressure Monitor, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [355](#)
Pressure, tyres [344](#)
Pressure warning RPA, tyres [361](#)
Prevention of rear collision [223](#)
Printed on-board literature [20](#)
Profiles, see Driver profiles [78](#)
Protection function, Glass Roof, see Anti-trap mechanism [114](#)
Protection function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism [111](#)

R

Racing track [322](#)
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
Radio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

- Radio signals [319](#)
- Rain sensor [156](#)
- Range [174](#)
- Rapid charging cable, see AC rapid charging cable [334](#)
- Rear automatic air conditioning [296](#)
- Rear collision warning, see Prevention of rear collision [223](#)
- Rear fog light [191](#)
- Rear fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
- Rear head restraints [124](#)
- Rear neck supports, see Head restraints [124](#)
- Rear seat backrests, folding down [311](#)
- Rear-view camera, see Surround View [270](#)
- Rear-view camera, without Surround View [267](#)
- Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim [127](#)
- Rear window heating [290](#), [295](#)
- Recirculated-air mode [289](#), [294](#)
- Recirculating air filter, see Microfilter/activated carbon filter [295](#)
- Recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode [289](#), [294](#)
- Recommended makes of tyre [348](#)
- Recuperation, adaptive [328](#)
- Recycling [382](#)
- Recycling, high-voltage battery [382](#)
- Refuelling [341](#)
- Regular charging [324](#)
- Remote 3D View [276](#)
- Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Remote control, see Vehicle key [90](#)
- Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Remote Software Upgrade [69](#)
- Replacement of parts [383](#)
- Replacement wheel, see Emergency wheel [368](#)
- Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [384](#)
- Replacing front lights, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing headlights, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing laser headlights, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing lights, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing parts [383](#)
- Replacing rear light, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing tail lights, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
- Replacing wheels and tyres [347](#)
- Reserve warning, see Range [174](#)
- Reservoir for washer fluid [378](#)
- Resetting, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [357](#)
- Resetting vehicle settings [76](#)
- Restraint systems for children, see Carrying children safely [130](#)
- Rest state, standby state and drive-ready state [49](#)
- RESUME button, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- RESUME button, see Cruise Control [243](#)
- Retreaded tyres [348](#)
- Reuse, recycling [382](#)
- Reversing assistant, see Parking Assistant [277](#)
- Revolution counter [174](#)
- Right-hand traffic, light setting [191](#)
- Rim cleaner, light alloy wheels [399](#)
- Road priority warning [224](#)
- Roof lining [48](#)
- Roof load [405](#)
- Roof rack [321](#)
- Rope for tow-starting/towing [395](#)
- Roundabout light [189](#)
- Route-ahead assistant [327](#)
- Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- RPA runflat indicator [361](#)
- RSC Runflat System, see Run-flat tyres [349](#)
- RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Rubber parts, care [399](#)
- Runflat indicator RPA [361](#)
- Run-flat tyres [349](#)
- Run Flat tyres, see Run-flat tyres [349](#)
- Running in [318](#)
- Run-on of fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)

S

- Safe seating position [116](#)
- Safe Share function, see Key card [100](#)
- Safety locks, doors and windows [143](#)
- Safety of the hybrid system [19](#)

- Safety package, see Active Protection [233](#)
- Safety switch, windows [112](#)
- Safety systems, see Airbags [194](#)
- Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety [198](#)
- Saving energy, see Shift point indicator [176](#)
- Saving fuel [323](#)
- Screen Mirroring, connection [87](#)
- Screen, see Control Display [56](#)
- Screwdriver, see On-board tool kit [383](#)
- Sealant, see Mobility System [350](#)
- Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat [122](#)
- Seat belt reminder for rear seats [122](#)
- Seat belts [119](#)
- Seat belts, care [400](#)
- Seat heating [129](#)
- Seats and head restraints [116](#)
- Seat, see Memory function [128](#)
- Seats, front [116](#)
- Securing, transported loads [309](#)
- Selection list in the instrument cluster [179](#)
- Selector lever, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
- Sensors, care [400](#)
- Service history [176](#)
- Service requirements [175](#)
- Service requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service [380](#)
- Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Service, see Accident Assistance [389](#)
- Service, see Breakdown assistance [388](#)
- SET button, see Active Cruise Control [245](#)
- SET button, see Cruise Control [243](#)
- Settings, Control Display [72](#)
- Settings, locking/unlocking [107](#)
- Settings, resetting [76](#)
- Settings, seats and head restraints [116](#)
- Setup assistant [78](#)
- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [158](#)
- Shift point indicator [176](#)
- Side airbag [194](#)
- Side collision warning [220](#)
- Side lights [186](#)
- Side nozzles, see Ventilation [296](#)
- Signal horn, horn [44](#)
- Signals on unlocking, see Acknowledgement signals [107](#)
- Sizes [404](#)
- Sizes, see Technical data [404](#)
- Sliding/tilting roof, see Electric glass roof [112](#)
- Smartphone, connecting [82](#)
- Smartphone, operating via voice control [64](#)
- Smartphone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Smokers package [301](#)
- SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Snow chains [354](#)
- Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD [381](#)
- Sockets [302](#)
- Software update, see Remote Software Upgrade [69](#)
- Software upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [69](#)
- Software version, see Remote Software Upgrade [69](#)
- Soot particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [319](#)
- SOS button [390](#)
- SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call [391](#)
- Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Sound, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
- Spanner, see On-board tool kit [383](#)
- Spare wheel, see Emergency wheel [368](#)
- Special equipment, see Vehicle equipment [9](#)
- Speed Limit Assist [254](#)
- Speed Limit Device, Manual Speed Limiter [241](#)
- Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info [177](#)
- Speed limiter, manual [241](#)
- Speed Limit Info [177](#)
- Speed warning [74](#)
- Sport displays [181](#)
- SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)
- Sport programme, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
- Sports steering, variable [240](#)
- SPORT STANDARD, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)

Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension [286](#)

Stability control systems [237](#)

Standard charging cable, see Mode 2 charging cable [334](#)

Standard charging, see Mode 2 charging [332](#)

Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment [9](#)

Standby state, rest state and drive-ready state [49](#)

Standing air conditioning [298](#)

Start/stop button [147](#)

Starting assistance [393](#)

Starting assistance, see DSC [237](#)

Starting, see Drive-ready state [50](#)

Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state [50](#)

Stationary air conditioning, setting [108](#)

Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

Status indicator, tyres [357](#)

Status information, iDrive [54](#)

Status of the Owner's Handbook [10](#)

Status, vehicle [182](#)

Steering and lane control assistant incl. traffic-queue assistant [257](#)

Steering wheel, adjusting [127](#)

Steering wheel, buttons [44](#)

Steering wheel heating [127](#)

Steering wheel, see Memory function [128](#)

Steptronic sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission [158](#)

Steptronic transmission [158](#)

Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state [50](#)

Storage, charge cables [334](#)

Storage compartment, boot [311](#)

Storage compartment, centre console [306](#)

Storage compartments [305](#)

Storage facilities [305](#)

Storage, tyres [349](#)

Storage, vehicle [401](#)

Stowing charging cables, see Storage [334](#)

Stowing, transported loads [309](#)

Suitable devices [83](#)

Suitable mobile telephones [83](#)

Summer tyres, tread [346](#)

Sun visor [301](#)

Supplementary handbook [20](#)

Supplementary text message [171](#)

Support of the internal combustion engine [146](#)

Surround View [270](#)

Surround View, Gesture Control [67](#)

Suspension settings, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)

Switches, see Driving area [44](#)

Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)

Symbols and displays [9](#)

SYNC programme, automatic air conditioning [295](#)

T

Tailgate, see Boot lid [103](#)

Tank aeration [341](#)

Tank display [174](#)

Tank unlocking, see Tank aeration [341](#)

Technical changes, see Your own safety [10](#)

Technical data [404](#)

Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)

Temperature, automatic air conditioning [288](#), [292](#)

Temperature display, see Outside temperature [174](#)

Temperature preconditioning, see Standing air conditioning [298](#)

Tension belt, see Lashing eyes in the boot [310](#)

Tensioning straps, boot [310](#)

Text message, supplementary [171](#)

Thiefproof wheel studs [366](#)

Thigh support [118](#)

Through-loading system [311](#)

Tilt alarm sensor [110](#)

Tilting down, front passenger's mirror, see Automatic parking function [126](#)

Time [73](#)

Tool [383](#)

Torque display, see Sport displays [181](#)

Total weight [405](#)

Total weight, permitted [405](#)
Touchpad, Controller [59](#)
Tourist function, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic [191](#)
Tow bar [395](#)
Tow fitting, see Towing eye [396](#)
Towing away [394](#)
Towing eye [396](#)
Towing rope [395](#)
Towing, see Tow-starting and towing [394](#)
Tow-starting [394](#)
TPM Tyre Pressure Monitor [355](#)
Traction control [239](#)
TRACTION, driving dynamics [239](#)
Traffic information, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
Traffic jam assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant [257](#)
Traffic-queue assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant [257](#)
Transmission lockout, unlocking electronically [162](#)
Transported loads, stowing and securing [309](#)
Tread, tyres [346](#)
Trip distance recorder, see Journey data [180](#)
Triple turn signal [155](#)
Turn indicator, indicator lamp [173](#)
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher [154](#)
Turn indicators, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights [384](#)
Turning circle lines, rear-view camera [268](#)
Turning circle lines, Surround View [272](#)
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
Tyre damage [346](#)
Tyre inflation pressure [344](#)
Tyre makes, recommendation [348](#)
Tyre pressure [344](#)
Tyre pressure monitor, see RPA [361](#)
Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [355](#)
Tyre repair kit, see Mobility System [350](#)
Tyres and wheels [344](#)
Tyre sealant, see Mobility System [350](#)
Tyre settings [356](#)
Tyres with emergency running properties [349](#)

Tyre tread [346](#)

U

Units of measure [74](#)
Unloaded weight [405](#)
Unlock-button, Steptronic transmission [158](#)
Unlocking, automatic [108](#)
Unlocking, see Opening and closing [90](#)
Unlocking, settings [107](#)
Unlocking the charging cable manually [335](#)
Unlocking, vehicle key [91](#)
Updates after going to press [10](#)
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [69](#)
USB connection [85](#)
USB interface, position in the vehicle [303](#)
Use, intended [10](#)

V

Vanity mirror [301](#)
Variable sports steering [240](#)
Vehicle acknowledgement signals [107](#)
Vehicle battery [384](#)
Vehicle breakdown, see Help in case of a breakdown [388](#)
Vehicle care [398](#)
Vehicle configuration, resetting [76](#)
Vehicle equipment [9](#)
Vehicle identification number [18](#)
Vehicle key [90](#)
Vehicle key, additional [93](#)
Vehicle key, changing batteries [93](#)
Vehicle key, integrated key [94](#)
Vehicle key, loss [93](#)
Vehicle key, malfunction [93](#)
Vehicle paintwork [398](#)
Vehicle position, vehicle positioning [75](#)
Vehicle, running in [318](#)
Vehicle status [182](#)
Vehicle wash [397](#)
Ventilation [296](#)
Ventilation, see Standing air conditioning [298](#)
Vents, see Ventilation [296](#)
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder [232](#)

Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 VIN, see Vehicle identification number [18](#)
 Voice control, Gesture Control [67](#)
 Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [65](#)
 Voice control, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Voice control system [61](#)
 Volume, Gesture Control [67](#)

W

Warning and indicator lamps [171](#)
 Warning lamp in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning [283](#)
 Warning lamp in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning [216](#)
 Warning messages, see Check Control [170](#)
 Warning of crossing traffic [283](#)
 Warning triangle [388](#)
 Warranty [10](#)
 Washer fluid [378](#)
 Washing bay view, Surround View [272](#)
 Washing fluid, see Washer fluid [378](#)
 Washing, vehicle [397](#)
 Wash system [397](#)
 Water, hybrid system [19](#)
 Water on roads [320](#)
 Water, see Condensation when vehicle is parked [321](#)
 Website [8](#)
 Weights [405](#)
 Weights, see Technical data [404](#)
 Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light [187](#)
 Welcome lights [187](#)
 Welcome light when unlocking [91](#)
 Welcome screen, driver profiles [78](#)
 Wheel change [364](#)
 Wheels and tyres [344](#)
 Wheels and tyres, replacing [347](#)
 Wheels, see Runflat indicator RPA [361](#)
 Widgets, iDrive [54](#)
 WiFi connection [85](#)
 WiFi hotspot, see Internet connection [85](#)
 Window, defrosting [290](#), [295](#)

Windscreen, defrosting [290](#), [295](#)
 Windscreen washing system, see Wiper system [155](#)
 Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system [155](#)
 Winter storage, care [401](#)
 Winter tyres [348](#)
 Winter tyres, tread [346](#)
 Wiper blades, replacing [383](#)
 Wipers, fold-out position [157](#)
 Wipers, see Wiper system [155](#)
 Wiper system [155](#)
 Wiping fluid, see Washer fluid [378](#)
 Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Wireless charging of a smartphone, see Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [8](#)
 Wood parts, care [399](#)
 Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [54](#)
 Working in, engine compartment [371](#)
 Working on, hybrid system [19](#)
 Wrong-way driving warning [228](#)

X

xDrive [239](#)
 XTRABOOST, see Driving Experience Control [148](#)

Y

Your own safety [10](#)



01402629024 en



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customised vehicle information in an app.
Optimised for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.



Download on the
App Store



GET IT ON
Google Play



01402629024 en

Online Edition for Part no. 01402629024 - VI/19